*Dostoevschema*

Team Digital Dostoevsky

A Minimal TEI Customization

This TEI ODD defines a TEI customization that is as minimal as possible and the schema generated from it will validate a document that is minimally valid against the TEI scheme. It includes only the ten required elements:

1. <teiHeader> from the header module to store required metadata
2. <fileDesc> from the header module to record information about this file
3. <titleStmt> from the header module to record information about the title
4. <publicationStmt> from the header module to detail how it is published
5. <sourceDesc> from the header module to record where it is from
6. <p> from the core module for use in the header and the body
7. <title> from the core module for use in the titleStmt
8. <TEI> from the textstructure module because what is a TEI file without that?
9. <text> from the textstructure module to hold some text
10. <body> from the textstructure module as a place to put that text

# Elements

## <TEI>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<TEI>** (TEI document) contains a single TEI-conformant document, combining a single TEI header with one or more members of the model.resource class. Multiple <TEI> elements may be combined within a <TEI> (or <teiCorpus>) element. [[4. Default Text Structure](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DS) [15.1. Varieties of Composite Text](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCDEF)] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **version** | specifies the version number of the TEI Guidelines against which this document is valid.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.version | | **Note** | Major editions of the Guidelines have long been informally referred to by a name made up of the letter P (for Proposal) followed by a digit. The current release is one of the many releases of the fifth major edition of the Guidelines, known as P5. This attribute may be used to associate a TEI document with a specific release of the P5 Guidelines, in the absence of a more precise association provided by the *@source* attribute on the associated <schemaSpec>. | | |
| **Contained by** | **textstructure:** TEI |
| **May contain** | **header:** teiHeader  **linking:** standOff  **textstructure:** TEI text |
| **Note** | This element is required. It is customary to specify the TEI namespace http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0 on it, using the *@xmlns* attribute. |
| **Example** | <**TEI** **version**="3.3.0" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  <**teiHeader**>   <**fileDesc**>    <**titleStmt**>     <**title**>The shortest TEI Document Imaginable</**title**>    </**titleStmt**>    <**publicationStmt**>     <**p**>First published as part of TEI P2, this is the P5          version using a name space.</**p**>    </**publicationStmt**>    <**sourceDesc**>     <**p**>No source: this is an original work.</**p**>    </**sourceDesc**>   </**fileDesc**>  </**teiHeader**>  <**text**>   <**body**>    <**p**>This is about the shortest TEI document imaginable.</**p**>   </**body**>  </**text**> </**TEI**> |
| **Example** | <**TEI** **version**="2.9.1" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  <**teiHeader**>   <**fileDesc**>    <**titleStmt**>     <**title**>A TEI Document containing four page images </**title**>    </**titleStmt**>    <**publicationStmt**>     <**p**>Unpublished demonstration file.</**p**>    </**publicationStmt**>    <**sourceDesc**>     <**p**>No source: this is an original work.</**p**>    </**sourceDesc**>   </**fileDesc**>  </**teiHeader**>  <**facsimile**>   <**graphic** **url**="page1.png"/>   <**graphic** **url**="page2.png"/>   <**graphic** **url**="page3.png"/>   <**graphic** **url**="page4.png"/>  </**facsimile**> </**TEI**> |
| **Schematron** | <sch:ns prefix="tei"  uri="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"/> <sch:ns prefix="xs"  uri="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"/> |
| **Schematron** | <sch:ns prefix="rng"  uri="http://relaxng.org/ns/structure/1.0"/> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <elementRef key="teiHeader"/>   <alternate>    <sequence>     <classRef key="model.resource"      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>     <elementRef key="TEI"      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>    </sequence>    <elementRef key="TEI"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>   </alternate>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element TEI {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  attribute version { text }?,  ( [tei\_teiHeader](#TEI.tei_teiHeader), ( ( [tei\_model.resource](#TEI.tei_model.resource)+, [tei\_TEI](#TEI.tei_TEI)\* ) | [tei\_TEI](#TEI.tei_TEI)+ ) ) } |

## <ab>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<ab>** (anonymous block) contains any arbitrary component-level unit of text, acting as an anonymous container for phrase or inter level elements analogous to, but without the semantic baggage of, a paragraph. [[16.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SASE)] | |
| **Module** | linking |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declaring (@decls) att.fragmentable (@part) att.written (@hand) |
| **Member of** | model.pLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** q said  **header:** publicationStmt sourceDesc  **namesdates:** climate event langKnowledge listRelation nym object occupation org person personGrp persona place population state terrain trait  **textstructure:** body |
| **May contain** | **core:** q said title  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName persPronouns placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  character data |
| **Note** | The <ab> element may be used at the encoder's discretion to mark any component-level elements in a text for which no other more specific appropriate markup is defined. |
| **Example** | <**div** **n**="Genesis" **type**="book">  <**div** **n**="1" **type**="chapter">   <**ab**>In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth.</**ab**>   <**ab**>And the earth was without form, and void; and      darkness was upon the face of the deep. And the      spirit of God moved upon the face of the waters.</**ab**>   <**ab**>And God said, Let there be light: and there was light.</**ab**> <!-- ...-->  </**div**> </**div**> |
| **Schematron** | <s:report test="not(ancestor::tei:floatingText) and (ancestor::tei:p or ancestor::tei:ab) and not(parent::tei:exemplum |parent::tei:item |parent::tei:note |parent::tei:q |parent::tei:quote |parent::tei:remarks |parent::tei:said |parent::tei:sp |parent::tei:stage |parent::tei:cell |parent::tei:figure)"> Abstract model violation: ab may not occur inside paragraphs or other ab elements. </s:report> |
| **Schematron** | <s:report test="ancestor::tei:l or ancestor::tei:lg"> Abstract model violation: Lines may not contain higher-level divisions such as p or ab. </s:report> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element ab {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_att.declaring.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.declaring),  [tei\_att.fragmentable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.fragmentable),  [tei\_att.written.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.written),  [tei\_macro.paraContent](#TEI.tei_macro.paraContent)} |

## <addName>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<addName>** (additional name) contains an additional name component, such as a nickname, epithet, or alias, or any other descriptive phrase used within a personal name. [[13.2.1. Personal Names](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPER)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.personal (@full, @sort) (att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) ) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.persNamePart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** p q said title  **linking:** ab seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset org orgName persName persPronouns placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname |
| **May contain** | **core:** q said title  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName persPronouns placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  character data |
| **Example** | <**persName**>  <**forename**>Frederick</**forename**>  <**addName** **type**="epithet">the Great</**addName**>  <**roleName**>Emperor of Prussia</**roleName**> </**persName**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element addName {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.personal.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.personal),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <affiliation>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<affiliation>** (affiliation) contains an informal description of a person's present or past affiliation with some organization, for example an employer or sponsor. [[15.2.2. The Participant Description](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHPA)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | att.typed | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Sample values include:** | **sponsor**  **recommend**  **discredit**  **pledged** | | |
| **Member of** | model.addressLike model.persStateLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** p q said title  **linking:** ab seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown location nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset orgName persName persPronouns person personGrp persona placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname |
| **May contain** | **core:** q said title  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName persPronouns placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  character data |
| **Note** | If included, the name of an organization may be tagged using either the <name> element as above, or the more specific <orgName> element. |
| **Example** | <**affiliation**>Junior project officer for the US <**name** **type**="org">National Endowment for    the Humanities</**name**> </**affiliation**> |
| **Example** | This example indicates that the person was affiliated with the Australian Journalists Association at some point between the dates listed.  <**affiliation** **notAfter**="1960-01-01"  **notBefore**="1957-02-28">Paid up member of the <**orgName**>Australian Journalists Association</**orgName**> </**affiliation**> |
| **Example** | This example indicates that the person was affiliated with Mount Holyoke College throughout the entire span of the date range listed.  <**affiliation** **from**="1902-01-01"  **to**="1906-01-01">Was an assistant professor at Mount Holyoke College.</**affiliation**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element affiliation {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.editLike),  [tei\_att.datable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.datable),  [tei\_att.naming.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.naming),  [tei\_att.typed.attribute.subtype](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  attribute type { text }?,  [tei\_macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <age>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<age>** (age) specifies the age of a person. [[13.3.2.1. Personal Characteristics](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPERSEpc)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) att.typed (type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | att.typed | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Sample values include:** | **western**  **sui**  **subjective**  **objective**  **inWorld** (in world) age of a fictional character at the time the story takes place, rather than at the time the story is told  **chronological**  **biological**  **psychological**  **functional** | | | **value** | supplies a numeric code representing the age or age group   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.count | | **Note** | This attribute may be used to complement a more detailed discussion of a person's age in the content of the element | | |
| **Member of** | model.persStateLike |
| **Contained by** | **namesdates:** person personGrp persona |
| **May contain** | **core:** q title  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName persPronouns placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  character data |
| **Note** | As with other culturally-constructed traits such as sex, the way in which this concept is described in different cultural contexts may vary. The normalizing attributes are provided as a means of simplifying that variety to Western European norms and should not be used where that is inappropriate. The content of the element may be used to describe the intended concept in more detail, using plain text. |
| **Example** | <**age** **notAfter**="1986" **value**="2">under 20 in the early eighties</**age**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element age {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.editLike),  [tei\_att.datable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.datable),  [tei\_att.typed.attribute.subtype](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_att.dimensions.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.dimensions),  attribute type { text }?,  attribute value { text }?,  [tei\_macro.phraseSeq.limited](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq.limited)} |

## <alt>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<alt>** (alternation) identifies an alternation or a set of choices among elements or passages. [[16.8. Alternation](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SAAT)] | |
| **Module** | linking |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.pointing (target, @targetLang, @evaluate)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **target** | specifies the destination of the reference by supplying one or more URI References   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | att.pointing | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 2–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace | | | **mode** | states whether the alternations gathered in this collection are exclusive or inclusive.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Recommended | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Legal values are:** | **excl** (exclusive) indicates that the alternation is exclusive, i.e. that at most one of the alternatives occurs.  **incl** (inclusive) indicates that the alternation is not exclusive, i.e. that one or more of the alternatives occur. | | | **weights** | If *@mode* is excl, each weight states the probability that the corresponding alternative occurs. If *@mode* is incl each weight states the probability that the corresponding alternative occurs given that at least one of the other alternatives occurs.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 2–∞ occurrences of teidata.probability separated by whitespace | | **Note** | If *@mode* is excl, the sum of weights must be 1. If *@mode* is incl, the sum of weights must be in the range from 0 to the number of alternants. | | |
| **Member of** | model.global.meta |
| **Contained by** | **core:** p q said title  **linking:** ab altGrp seg standOff  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset orgName persName persPronouns person personGrp persona placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **textstructure:** body text |
| **May contain** | Empty element |
| **Example** | <**alt** **mode**="excl" **target**="#we.fun #we.sun"  **weights**="0.5 0.5"/> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <empty/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element alt {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.pointing.attribute.targetLang](#TEI.tei_att.pointing),  [tei\_att.pointing.attribute.evaluate](#TEI.tei_att.pointing),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  attribute target { list { \* } }?,  attribute mode { "excl" | "incl" }?,  attribute weights { list { \* } }?,  empty } |

## <altGrp>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<altGrp>** (alternation group) groups a collection of <alt> elements and possibly pointers. [[16.8. Alternation](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SAAT)] | |
| **Module** | linking |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.pointing.group (@domains, @targFunc) (att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate)) (att.typed (@type, @subtype))   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **mode** | states whether the alternations gathered in this collection are exclusive or inclusive.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Legal values are:** | **excl** (exclusive) indicates that the alternation is exclusive, i.e. that at most one of the alternatives occurs. [Default]  **incl** (inclusive) indicates that the alternation is not exclusive, i.e. that one or more of the alternatives occur. | | |
| **Member of** | model.global.meta |
| **Contained by** | **core:** p q said title  **linking:** ab seg standOff  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset orgName persName persPronouns person personGrp persona placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **textstructure:** body text |
| **May contain** | **linking:** alt |
| **Note** | Any number of alternations, pointers or extended pointers. |
| **Example** | <**altGrp** **mode**="excl">  <**alt** **target**="#dm #lt #bb"   **weights**="0.5 0.25 0.25"/>  <**alt** **target**="#rl #db" **weights**="0.5 0.5"/> </**altGrp**> |
| **Example** | <**altGrp** **mode**="incl">  <**alt** **target**="#dm #rl" **weights**="0.90 0.90"/>  <**alt** **target**="#lt #rl" **weights**="0.5 0.5"/>  <**alt** **target**="#bb #rl" **weights**="0.5 0.5"/>  <**alt** **target**="#dm #db" **weights**="0.10 0.10"/>  <**alt** **target**="#lt #db" **weights**="0.45 0.90"/>  <**alt** **target**="#bb #db" **weights**="0.45 0.90"/> </**altGrp**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <elementRef key="alt"/>   <elementRef key="ptr"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element altGrp {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.pointing.group.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.pointing.group),  attribute mode { "excl" | "incl" }?,  ( [tei\_alt](#TEI.tei_alt) | [ptr](#TEI.ptr) )\* } |

## <anchor>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<anchor>** (anchor point) attaches an identifier to a point within a text, whether or not it corresponds with a textual element. [[8.4.2. Synchronization and Overlap](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TS.html#TSSAPA) [16.5. Correspondence and Alignment](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SACS)] | |
| **Module** | linking |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.milestoneLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** p q said title  **linking:** ab seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset org orgName persName persPronouns person personGrp persona placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **textstructure:** body text |
| **May contain** | Empty element |
| **Note** | On this element, the global *@xml:id* attribute must be supplied to specify an identifier for the point at which this element occurs within a document. The value used may be chosen freely provided that it is unique within the document and is a syntactically valid name. There is no requirement for values containing numbers to be in sequence. |
| **Example** | <**s**>The anchor is he<**anchor** **xml:id**="A234"/>re somewhere.</**s**> <**s**>Help me find it.<**ptr** **target**="#A234"/> </**s**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <empty/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element anchor { [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global), [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed), empty } |

## <annotation>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<annotation>** represents an annotation following the [Web Annotation Data Model](#WADM). [[16.10. The standOff Container](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SASOstdf)] | |
| **Module** | linking |
| **Attributes** | Attributesatt.global (xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.global.source (@source) att.pointing (target, @targetLang, @evaluate)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **xml:id** | (identifier) provides a unique identifier for the element bearing the attribute.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | att.global | | **Status** | Required | | **Datatype** | [ID](https://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema-2/#ID) | | | **target** | specifies the destination of the reference by supplying one or more URI References   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | att.pointing | | **Status** | Required | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace | | | **motivation** | |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace | | **Legal values are:** | **assessing** intent is to assess the target resource in some way, rather than simply make a comment about it  **bookmarking** intent is to create a bookmark to the target or part thereof  **classifying** intent is to classify the target in some way  **commenting** intent is to comment about the target  **describing** intent is to describe the target, rather than (for example) comment on it  **editing** intent is to request an edit or a change to the target resource  **highlighting** intent is to highlight the target resource or a segment thereof  **identifying** intent is to assign an identity to the target  **linking** intent is to link to a resource related to the target  **moderating** intent is to assign some value or quality to the target  **questioning** intent is to ask a question about the target  **replying** intent is to reply to a previous statement, either an annotation or another resource  **tagging** intent is to associate a tag with the target | | **Note** | For further detailed explanation of the suggested values, see the [Web Annotation Vocabulary](#WAV) (WAV). The motivations described here map to URIs defined by the WAV and when exported to RDF or JSON-LD must have the URI http://www.w3.org/ns/oa# prepended.  As an [RDF](#RDFPrimer) vocabulary, WADM permits the definition of new motivations (see Appendix C of the WAV). In TEI, new motivations may be defined in a custom ODD (see section [23.3.1.3](#MDMDAL)). New motivations must also map to URIs defined by an RDF ontology extending the WAV. | | |
| **Member of** | model.annotationLike |
| **Contained by** | **linking:** listAnnotation standOff |
| **May contain** | Empty element |
| **Example** | <**annotation** **motivation**="linking"  **target**="#Gallia" **xml:id**="ann1"> <!-- See https://www.w3.org/TR/annotation-model/#lifecycle-information and https://www.w3.org/TR/annotation-model/#agents -->  <**respStmt** **xml:id**="fred">   <**resp**>creator</**resp**>   <**persName**>Fred Editor</**persName**>  </**respStmt**>  <**revisionDesc**>   <**change** **status**="created"    **when**="2020-05-21T13:59:00Z" **who**="#fred"/>   <**change** **status**="modified"    **when**="2020-05-21T19:48:00Z" **who**="#fred"/>  </**revisionDesc**> <!-- See https://www.w3.org/TR/annotation-model/#rights-information -->  <**licence** **target**="http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/3.0/"/> <!-- Multiple bodies --> <!-- Pointers to sections of text in the same document -->  <**ptr** **target**="#string-range(c1p1s1,0,6)"/>  <**ptr** **target**="#string-range(c1p1s6,19,7)"/> </**annotation**> |
| **Example** | <**annotation** **motivation**="commenting"  **target**="#line1" **xml:id**="TheCorrectTitle">  <**note**>The correct title of this specification, and the correct full name of XML, is    "Extensible Markup Language". "eXtensible Markup Language" is just a spelling error.    However, the abbreviation "XML" is not only correct but, appearing as it does in the title    of the specification, an official name of the Extensible Markup Language. </**note**> </**annotation**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <elementRef key="respStmt"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <elementRef key="revisionDesc"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <elementRef key="licence"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <classRef key="model.annotationPart.body"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element annotation {  [tei\_att.global.attribute.n](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.global.attribute.xmllang](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.global.attribute.xmlbase](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.global.attribute.xmlspace](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.global.rendition.attribute.rend](#TEI.tei_att.global.rendition),  [tei\_att.global.rendition.attribute.style](#TEI.tei_att.global.rendition),  [tei\_att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition](#TEI.tei_att.global.rendition),  [tei\_att.global.linking.attribute.corresp](#TEI.tei_att.global.linking),  [tei\_att.global.linking.attribute.synch](#TEI.tei_att.global.linking),  [tei\_att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs](#TEI.tei_att.global.linking),  [tei\_att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf](#TEI.tei_att.global.linking),  [tei\_att.global.linking.attribute.next](#TEI.tei_att.global.linking),  [tei\_att.global.linking.attribute.prev](#TEI.tei_att.global.linking),  [tei\_att.global.linking.attribute.exclude](#TEI.tei_att.global.linking),  [tei\_att.global.linking.attribute.select](#TEI.tei_att.global.linking),  [tei\_att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert](#TEI.tei_att.global.responsibility),  [tei\_att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp](#TEI.tei_att.global.responsibility),  [tei\_att.global.source.attribute.source](#TEI.tei_att.global.source),  [tei\_att.pointing.attribute.targetLang](#TEI.tei_att.pointing),  [tei\_att.pointing.attribute.evaluate](#TEI.tei_att.pointing),  attribute xml:id { text },  attribute target { list { + } },  attribute motivation  {  list  {  (  "assessing"  | "bookmarking"  | "classifying"  | "commenting"  | "describing"  | "editing"  | "highlighting"  | "identifying"  | "linking"  | "moderating"  | "questioning"  | "replying"  | "tagging"  )+  }  }?,  ( [respStmt](#TEI.respStmt)\*, [revisionDesc](#TEI.revisionDesc)\*, [licence](#TEI.licence)\*, [tei\_model.annotationPart.body](#TEI.tei_model.annotationPart.body)\* ) } |

## <birth>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<birth>** (birth) contains information about a person's birth, such as its date and place. [[15.2.2. The Participant Description](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHPA)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | att.typed | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Sample values include:** | **caesarean** (caesarean section)  **vaginal** (vaginal delivery)  **exNihilo** (ex nihilo)  **incorporated**  **founded**  **established** | | |
| **Member of** | model.personPart |
| **Contained by** | **namesdates:** person personGrp persona |
| **May contain** | **core:** q said title  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName persPronouns placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  character data |
| **Example** | <**birth**>Before 1920, Midlands region.</**birth**> |
| **Example** | <**birth** **when**="1960-12-10">In a small cottage near <**name** **type**="place">Aix-la-Chapelle</**name**>,  early in the morning of <**date**>10 Dec 1960</**date**> </**birth**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element birth {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.editLike),  [tei\_att.datable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.datable),  [tei\_att.dimensions.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.dimensions),  [tei\_att.naming.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.naming),  [tei\_att.typed.attribute.subtype](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  attribute type { text }?,  [tei\_macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <bloc>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<bloc>** (bloc) contains the name of a geo-political unit consisting of two or more nation states or countries. [[13.2.3. Place Names](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPLAC)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) |
| **Member of** | model.placeNamePart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** p q said title  **linking:** ab seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown location nameLink nationality objectIdentifier objectName occupation offset org orgName persName persPronouns place placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname |
| **May contain** | **core:** q said title  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName persPronouns placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  character data |
| **Example** | <**bloc** **type**="union">the European Union</**bloc**> <**bloc** **type**="continent">Africa</**bloc**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element bloc {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.naming.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.naming),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_att.datable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.datable),  [tei\_macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <body>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<body>** (text body) contains the whole body of a single unitary text, excluding any front or back matter. [[4. Default Text Structure](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DS)] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declaring (@decls) |
| **Contained by** | **textstructure:** text |
| **May contain** | **core:** p q said  **linking:** ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline  **namesdates:** listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation |
| **Example** | <**body**>  <**l**>Nu scylun hergan hefaenricaes uard</**l**>  <**l**>metudæs maecti end his modgidanc</**l**>  <**l**>uerc uuldurfadur sue he uundra gihuaes</**l**>  <**l**>eci dryctin or astelidæ</**l**>  <**l**>he aerist scop aelda barnum</**l**>  <**l**>heben til hrofe haleg scepen.</**l**>  <**l**>tha middungeard moncynnæs uard</**l**>  <**l**>eci dryctin æfter tiadæ</**l**>  <**l**>firum foldu frea allmectig</**l**>  <**trailer**>primo cantauit Cædmon istud carmen.</**trailer**> </**body**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <classRef key="model.global"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <sequence minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.divTop"/>    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="0">     <classRef key="model.global"/>     <classRef key="model.divTop"/>    </alternate>   </sequence>   <sequence minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="0">     <classRef key="model.global"/>     <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>    </alternate>   </sequence>   <alternate>    <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="1">     <classRef key="model.divLike"/>     <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"      minOccurs="0">      <classRef key="model.global"/>      <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>     </alternate>    </sequence>    <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="1">     <classRef key="model.div1Like"/>     <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"      minOccurs="0">      <classRef key="model.global"/>      <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>     </alternate>    </sequence>    <sequence>     <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"      minOccurs="1">      <classRef key="model.common"/>      <classRef key="model.global"       maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>     </sequence>     <alternate minOccurs="0">      <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"       minOccurs="1">       <classRef key="model.divLike"/>       <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"        minOccurs="0">        <classRef key="model.global"/>        <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>       </alternate>      </sequence>      <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"       minOccurs="1">       <classRef key="model.div1Like"/>       <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"        minOccurs="0">        <classRef key="model.global"/>        <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>       </alternate>      </sequence>     </alternate>    </sequence>   </alternate>   <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>    <classRef key="model.global"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   </sequence>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element body {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.declaring.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.declaring),  (  [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global)\*,  ( [tei\_model.divTop](#TEI.tei_model.divTop), ( [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global) | [tei\_model.divTop](#TEI.tei_model.divTop) )\* )?,  ( [tei\_model.divGenLike](#TEI.tei_model.divGenLike), ( [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global) | [tei\_model.divGenLike](#TEI.tei_model.divGenLike) )\* )?,  (  ( [tei\_model.divLike](#TEI.tei_model.divLike), ( [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global) | [tei\_model.divGenLike](#TEI.tei_model.divGenLike) )\* )+  | ( [tei\_model.div1Like](#TEI.tei_model.div1Like), ( [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global) | [tei\_model.divGenLike](#TEI.tei_model.divGenLike) )\* )+  | (  ( [tei\_model.common](#TEI.tei_model.common), [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global)\* )+,  (  (  [tei\_model.divLike](#TEI.tei_model.divLike),  ( [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global) | [tei\_model.divGenLike](#TEI.tei_model.divGenLike) )\*  )+  | (  [tei\_model.div1Like](#TEI.tei_model.div1Like),  ( [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global) | [tei\_model.divGenLike](#TEI.tei_model.divGenLike) )\*  )+  )?  )  ),  ( [tei\_model.divBottom](#TEI.tei_model.divBottom), [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global)\* )\*  ) } |

## <climate>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<climate>** (climate) contains information about the physical climate of a place. [[13.3.4.3. States, Traits, and Events](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDGEOGste)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.placeStateLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** p q said title  **linking:** ab seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc climate country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset org orgName persName persPronouns place placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **linking:** ab  **namesdates:** climate |
| **Example** | <**place** **xml:id**="ROMA">  <**placeName**>Rome</**placeName**> <!-- ... -->  <**climate**>   <**ab**>    <**table**>     <**head**>24-hr Average Temperature</**head**>     <**row**>      <**cell**/>      <**cell** **role**="label">Jan</**cell**>      <**cell** **role**="label">Jun</**cell**>      <**cell** **role**="label">Dec</**cell**>     </**row**>     <**row**>      <**cell** **role**="label">°C</**cell**>      <**cell** **role**="data">7.1</**cell**>      <**cell** **role**="data">21.7</**cell**>      <**cell** **role**="data">8.3</**cell**>     </**row**>     <**row**>      <**cell** **role**="label">°F</**cell**>      <**cell** **role**="data">44.8</**cell**>      <**cell** **role**="data">71.1</**cell**>      <**cell** **role**="data">46.9</**cell**>     </**row**>    </**table**>   </**ab**>   <**note**>Taken from <**bibl**>     <**abbr**>GHCN 2 Beta</**abbr**>: The Global Historical Climatology Network,        version 2 beta, 1904 months between 1811 and 1980. <**ptr** **target**="http://www.worldclimate.com/cgi-bin/data.pl?ref=N41E012+1202+0004058G2"/>    </**bibl**>   </**note**>  </**climate**> </**place**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <elementRef key="precision"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <classRef key="model.headLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <alternate>    <classRef key="model.pLike"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>    <classRef key="model.labelLike"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>   </alternate>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>    <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>   </alternate>   <elementRef key="climate"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element climate {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.datable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.datable),  [tei\_att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.editLike),  [tei\_att.naming.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.naming),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  (  [precision](#TEI.precision)\*,  [tei\_model.headLike](#TEI.tei_model.headLike)\*,  ( [tei\_model.pLike](#TEI.tei_model.pLike)+ | [tei\_model.labelLike](#TEI.tei_model.labelLike)+ ),  ( [tei\_model.noteLike](#TEI.tei_model.noteLike) | [tei\_model.biblLike](#TEI.tei_model.biblLike) )\*,  [tei\_climate](#TEI.tei_climate)\*  ) } |

## <country>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<country>** (country) contains the name of a geo-political unit, such as a nation, country, colony, or commonwealth, larger than or administratively superior to a region and smaller than a bloc. [[13.2.3. Place Names](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPLAC)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) |
| **Member of** | model.placeNamePart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** p q said title  **linking:** ab seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown location nameLink nationality objectIdentifier objectName occupation offset org orgName persName persPronouns place placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname |
| **May contain** | **core:** q said title  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName persPronouns placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  character data |
| **Note** | The recommended source for codes to represent coded country names is ISO 3166. |
| **Example** | <**country** **key**="DK">Denmark</**country**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element country {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.naming.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.naming),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_att.datable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.datable),  [tei\_macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <death>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<death>** (death) contains information about a person's death, such as its date and place. [[15.2.2. The Participant Description](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHPA)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | att.typed | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Sample values include:** | **proclaimed**  **assumed**  **verified**  **clinical**  **brain**  **natural**  **unnatural**  **fragmentation**  **dissolution** | | **Note** | This attribute is not intended to express the cause of death. | | |
| **Member of** | model.personPart |
| **Contained by** | **namesdates:** person personGrp persona |
| **May contain** | **core:** q said title  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName persPronouns placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  character data |
| **Example** | <**death** **when**="1902-10-01"/> |
| **Example** | <**death** **when**="1960-12-10">Passed away near <**name** **type**="place">Aix-la-Chapelle</**name**>, after suffering from cerebral palsy. </**death**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element death {  [tei\_att.datable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.datable),  [tei\_att.dimensions.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.dimensions),  [tei\_att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.editLike),  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.naming.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.naming),  [tei\_att.typed.attribute.subtype](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  attribute type { text }?,  [tei\_macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <district>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<district>** (district) contains the name of any kind of subdivision of a settlement, such as a parish, ward, or other administrative or geographic unit. [[13.2.3. Place Names](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPLAC)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) |
| **Member of** | model.placeNamePart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** p q said title  **linking:** ab seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown location nameLink nationality objectIdentifier objectName occupation offset org orgName persName persPronouns place placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname |
| **May contain** | **core:** q said title  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName persPronouns placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  character data |
| **Example** | <**placeName**>  <**district** **type**="ward">Jericho</**district**>  <**settlement**>Oxford</**settlement**> </**placeName**> |
| **Example** | <**placeName**>  <**district** **type**="area">South Side</**district**>  <**settlement**>Chicago</**settlement**> </**placeName**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element district {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.naming.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.naming),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_att.datable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.datable),  [tei\_macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <education>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<education>** (education) contains a description of the educational experience of a person. [[15.2.2. The Participant Description](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHPA)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | att.typed | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Sample values include:** | **primary**  **secondary**  **undergraduate**  **graduate**  **residency**  **apprenticeship** | | |
| **Member of** | model.persStateLike |
| **Contained by** | **namesdates:** person personGrp persona |
| **May contain** | **core:** q said title  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName persPronouns placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  character data |
| **Example** | <**education**>Left school at age 16</**education**> |
| **Example** | <**education** **from**="1986-01-01"  **to**="1990-06-30">Attended <**name**>Cherwell School</**name**> </**education**> |
| **Example** | <**education** **notAfter**="1690-06"  **notBefore**="1685-07">Anthony Hammond  smuggled her into the University of Cambridge, where she was  disguised as his male cousin, Jack. She remained there for some  months learning grammar, logic, rhetoric, and ethics</**education**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element education {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.editLike),  [tei\_att.datable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.datable),  [tei\_att.naming.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.naming),  [tei\_att.typed.attribute.subtype](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  attribute type { text }?,  [tei\_macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <event>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<event>** (event) contains data relating to any kind of significant event associated with a person, place, or organization. [[13.3.1. Basic Principles](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPERSbp)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.sortable (@sortKey)   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **where** | indicates the location of an event by pointing to a <place> element   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.pointer | | |
| **Member of** | model.eventLike |
| **Contained by** | **namesdates:** event listEvent org person personGrp persona place |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **linking:** ab link linkGrp  **namesdates:** event |
| **Example** | <**person**>  <**event** **type**="mat" **when**="1972-10-12">   <**label**>matriculation</**label**>  </**event**>  <**event** **type**="grad" **when**="1975-06-23">   <**label**>graduation</**label**>  </**event**> </**person**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <elementRef key="idno"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <classRef key="model.headLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <alternate>    <classRef key="model.pLike"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>    <classRef key="model.labelLike"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>   </alternate>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>    <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>    <elementRef key="linkGrp"/>    <elementRef key="link"/>    <elementRef key="idno"/>    <elementRef key="ptr"/>   </alternate>   <elementRef key="event"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element event {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.datable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.datable),  [tei\_att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.editLike),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_att.naming.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.naming),  [tei\_att.sortable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.sortable),  attribute where { text }?,  (  [idno](#TEI.idno)\*,  [tei\_model.headLike](#TEI.tei_model.headLike)\*,  ( [tei\_model.pLike](#TEI.tei_model.pLike)+ | [tei\_model.labelLike](#TEI.tei_model.labelLike)+ ),  (  [tei\_model.noteLike](#TEI.tei_model.noteLike) | [tei\_model.biblLike](#TEI.tei_model.biblLike) | [tei\_linkGrp](#TEI.tei_linkGrp) | [tei\_link](#TEI.tei_link) | [idno](#TEI.idno) | [ptr](#TEI.ptr) )\*,  [tei\_event](#TEI.tei_event)\*  ) } |

## <faith>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<faith>** (faith) specifies the faith, religion, or belief set of a person. [[13.3.2.1. Personal Characteristics](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPERSEpc)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.canonical (@key, @ref) att.typed (type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | att.typed | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Sample values include:** | **practicing**  **clandestine**  **patrilineal**  **matrilineal**  **convert** | | |
| **Member of** | model.persStateLike |
| **Contained by** | **namesdates:** person personGrp persona |
| **May contain** | **core:** q said title  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName persPronouns placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  character data |
| **Example** | <**faith**>protestant</**faith**> |
| **Example** | <**faith** **ref**="http://dbpedia.org/page/Manichaeism">Manichaeism</**faith**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element faith {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.editLike),  [tei\_att.datable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.datable),  [tei\_att.canonical.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.canonical),  [tei\_att.typed.attribute.subtype](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  attribute type { text }?,  [tei\_macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <fileDesc>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<fileDesc>** (file description) contains a full bibliographic description of an electronic file. [[2.2. The File Description](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD2) [2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD11)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Contained by** | **header:** teiHeader |
| **May contain** | **header:** publicationStmt sourceDesc titleStmt |
| **Note** | The major source of information for those seeking to create a catalogue entry or bibliographic citation for an electronic file. As such, it provides a title and statements of responsibility together with details of the publication or distribution of the file, of any series to which it belongs, and detailed bibliographic notes for matters not addressed elsewhere in the header. It also contains a full bibliographic description for the source or sources from which the electronic text was derived. |
| **Example** | <**fileDesc**>  <**titleStmt**>   <**title**>The shortest possible TEI document</**title**>  </**titleStmt**>  <**publicationStmt**>   <**p**>Distributed as part of TEI P5</**p**>  </**publicationStmt**>  <**sourceDesc**>   <**p**>No print source exists: this is an original digital text</**p**>  </**sourceDesc**> </**fileDesc**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <sequence>    <elementRef key="titleStmt"/>    <elementRef key="editionStmt"     minOccurs="0"/>    <elementRef key="extent" minOccurs="0"/>    <elementRef key="publicationStmt"/>    <elementRef key="seriesStmt"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>    <elementRef key="notesStmt"     minOccurs="0"/>   </sequence>   <elementRef key="sourceDesc"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element fileDesc {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  (  (  [tei\_titleStmt](#TEI.tei_titleStmt),  [editionStmt](#TEI.editionStmt)?,  [extent](#TEI.extent)?,  [tei\_publicationStmt](#TEI.tei_publicationStmt),  [seriesStmt](#TEI.seriesStmt)\*,  [notesStmt](#TEI.notesStmt)?  ),  [tei\_sourceDesc](#TEI.tei_sourceDesc)+  ) } |

## <floruit>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<floruit>** (floruit) contains information about a person's period of activity. [[13.3.2.1. Personal Characteristics](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPERSEpc)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) |
| **Member of** | model.persStateLike |
| **Contained by** | **namesdates:** person personGrp persona |
| **May contain** | **core:** q said title  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName persPronouns placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  character data |
| **Example** | <**floruit** **notAfter**="1100" **notBefore**="1066"/> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element floruit {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.datable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.datable),  [tei\_att.dimensions.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.dimensions),  [tei\_att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.editLike),  [tei\_macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <forename>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<forename>** (forename) contains a forename, given or baptismal name. [[13.2.1. Personal Names](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPER)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.personal (@full, @sort) (att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) ) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.persNamePart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** p q said title  **linking:** ab seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset org orgName persName persPronouns placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname |
| **May contain** | **core:** q said title  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName persPronouns placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  character data |
| **Example** | <**persName**>  <**roleName**>Ex-President</**roleName**>  <**forename**>George</**forename**>  <**surname**>Bush</**surname**> </**persName**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element forename {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.personal.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.personal),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <genName>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<genName>** (generational name component) contains a name component used to distinguish otherwise similar names on the basis of the relative ages or generations of the persons named. [[13.2.1. Personal Names](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPER)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.personal (@full, @sort) (att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) ) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.persNamePart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** p q said title  **linking:** ab seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset org orgName persName persPronouns placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname |
| **May contain** | **core:** q said title  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName persPronouns placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  character data |
| **Example** | <**persName**>  <**forename**>Charles</**forename**>  <**genName**>II</**genName**> </**persName**> |
| **Example** | <**persName**>  <**surname**>Pitt</**surname**>  <**genName**>the Younger</**genName**> </**persName**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element genName {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.personal.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.personal),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <geo>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<geo>** (geographical coordinates) contains any expression of a set of geographic coordinates, representing a point, line, or area on the surface of the earth in some notation. [[13.3.4.1. Varieties of Location](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDGEOGva)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declaring (@decls) |
| **Member of** | model.measureLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** p q said title  **linking:** ab seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown location nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset orgName persName persPronouns placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname |
| **May contain** | Character data only |
| **Note** | Uses of <geo> can be associated with a coordinate system, defined by a <geoDecl> element supplied in the TEI header, using the *@decls* attribute. If no such link is made, the assumption is that the content of each <geo> element will be a pair of numbers separated by whitespace, to be interpreted as latitude followed by longitude according to the World Geodetic System. |
| **Example** | <**geoDecl** **datum**="WGS84" **xml:id**="WGS">World Geodetic System</**geoDecl**> <**geoDecl** **datum**="OSGB36" **xml:id**="OS">Ordnance Survey</**geoDecl**> <!-- ... --> <**location**>  <**desc**>A tombstone plus six lines of    Anglo-Saxon text, built into the west tower (on the south side    of the archway, at 8 ft. above the ground) of the    Church of St. Mary-le-Wigford in Lincoln.</**desc**>  <**geo** **decls**="#WGS">53.226658 -0.541254</**geo**>  <**geo** **decls**="#OS">SK 97481 70947</**geo**> </**location**> |
| **Example** | <**geo**>41.687142 -74.870109</**geo**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <textNode/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element geo { [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global), [tei\_att.declaring.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.declaring), text } |

## <geogFeat>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<geogFeat>** (geographical feature name) contains a common noun identifying some geographical feature contained within a geographic name, such as valley, mount, etc. [[13.2.3. Place Names](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPLAC)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) |
| **Member of** | model.offsetLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** p q said title  **linking:** ab seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown location nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset org orgName persName persPronouns placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname |
| **May contain** | **core:** q said title  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName persPronouns placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  character data |
| **Example** | <**geogName**> The <**geogFeat**>vale</**geogFeat**> of White Horse</**geogName**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element geogFeat {  [tei\_att.datable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.datable),  [tei\_att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.editLike),  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.naming.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.naming),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_att.dimensions.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.dimensions),  [tei\_macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <geogName>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<geogName>** (geographical name) identifies a name associated with some geographical feature such as Windrush Valley or Mount Sinai. [[13.2.3. Place Names](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPLAC)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.placeNamePart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** p q said title  **linking:** ab seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown location nameLink nationality objectIdentifier objectName occupation offset org orgName persName persPronouns place placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname |
| **May contain** | **core:** q said title  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName persPronouns placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  character data |
| **Example** | <**geogName**>  <**geogFeat**>Mount</**geogFeat**>  <**name**>Sinai</**name**> </**geogName**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element geogName {  [tei\_att.datable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.datable),  [tei\_att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.editLike),  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.naming.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.naming),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <join>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<join>** (join) identifies a possibly fragmented segment of text, by pointing at the possibly discontiguous elements which compose it. [[16.7. Aggregation](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SAAG)] | |
| **Module** | linking |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.typed (@type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **result** | specifies the name of an element which this aggregation may be understood to represent.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.name | | | **scope** | indicates whether the targets to be joined include the entire element indicated (the entire subtree including its root), or just the children of the target (the branches of the subtree).   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Recommended | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Legal values are:** | **root** the rooted subtrees indicated by the *@target* attribute are joined, each subtree become a child of the virtual element created by the join [Default]  **branches** the children of the subtrees indicated by the *@target* attribute become the children of the virtual element (i.e. the roots of the subtrees are discarded) | | |
| **Member of** | model.global.meta |
| **Contained by** | **core:** p q said title  **linking:** ab joinGrp seg standOff  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset orgName persName persPronouns person personGrp persona placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **textstructure:** body text |
| **May contain** | Empty element |
| **Example** | The following example is discussed in section <#SAAG>:  <**sp**>  <**speaker**>Hughie</**speaker**>  <**p**>How does it go? <**q**>    <**l** **xml:id**="frog\_x1">da-da-da</**l**>    <**l** **xml:id**="frog\_l2">gets a new frog</**l**>    <**l**>...</**l**>   </**q**>  </**p**> </**sp**> <**sp**>  <**speaker**>Louie</**speaker**>  <**p**>   <**q**>    <**l** **xml:id**="frog\_l1">When the old pond</**l**>    <**l**>...</**l**>   </**q**>  </**p**> </**sp**> <**sp**>  <**speaker**>Dewey</**speaker**>  <**p**>   <**q**>... <**l** **xml:id**="frog\_l3">It's a new pond.</**l**>   </**q**>  </**p**>  <**join** **result**="lg" **scope**="root"   **target**="#frog\_l1 #frog\_l2 #frog\_l3"/> </**sp**>  The <join> element here identifies a linegroup (<lg>) comprising the three lines indicated by the *@target* attribute. The value root for the *@scope* attribute indicates that the resulting virtual element contains the three <l> elements linked to at #frog\_l1 #frog\_l2 #frog\_l3, rather than their character data content. |
| **Example** | In this example, the attribute *@scope* is specified with the value of branches to indicate that the virtual list being constructed is to be made by taking the lists indicated by the *@target* attribute of the <join> element, discarding the <list> tags which enclose them, and combining the items contained within the lists into a single virtual list:  <**p**>Southern dialect (my own variety, at least) has only <**list** **xml:id**="LP1">   <**item**>    <**s**>I done gone</**s**>   </**item**>   <**item**>    <**s**>I done went</**s**>   </**item**>  </**list**> whereas Negro Non-Standard basilect has both these and <**list** **xml:id**="LP2">   <**item**>    <**s**>I done go</**s**>   </**item**>  </**list**>.</**p**> <**p**>White Southern dialect also has <**list** **xml:id**="LP3">   <**item**>    <**s**>I've done gone</**s**>   </**item**>   <**item**>    <**s**>I've done went</**s**>   </**item**>  </**list**> which, when they occur in Negro dialect, should probably be considered as borrowings from other varieties of English.</**p**> <**join** **result**="list" **scope**="branches"  **target**="#LP1 #LP2 #LP3" **xml:id**="LST1">  <**desc**>Sample sentences in Southern speech</**desc**> </**join**> |
| **Schematron** | <s:assert test="contains(@target,' ')">You must supply at least two values for @target on <s:name/> </s:assert> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <classRef key="model.descLike"/>   <classRef key="model.certLike"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element join {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.pointing.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.pointing),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  attribute result { text }?,  attribute scope { "root" | "branches" }?,  ( [tei\_model.descLike](#TEI.tei_model.descLike) | [tei\_model.certLike](#TEI.tei_model.certLike) )\* } |

## <joinGrp>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<joinGrp>** (join group) groups a collection of <join> elements and possibly pointers. [[16.7. Aggregation](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SAAG)] | |
| **Module** | linking |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.pointing.group (@domains, @targFunc) (att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate)) (att.typed (@type, @subtype))   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **result** | supplies the default value for the *@result* on each <join> included within the group.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.name | | |
| **Member of** | model.global.meta |
| **Contained by** | **core:** p q said title  **linking:** ab seg standOff  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset orgName persName persPronouns person personGrp persona placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **textstructure:** body text |
| **May contain** | **linking:** join |
| **Note** | Any number of <join> or <ptr> elements. |
| **Example** | <**joinGrp** **domains**="#zuitxt1 #zuitxt2 #zuitxt3"  **result**="q">  <**join** **target**="#zuiq1 #zuiq2 #zuiq6"/>  <**join** **target**="#zuiq3 #zuiq4 #zuiq5"/> </**joinGrp**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <elementRef key="equiv"/>    <elementRef key="gloss"/>   </alternate>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="1">    <elementRef key="join"/>    <elementRef key="ptr"/>   </alternate>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element joinGrp {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.pointing.group.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.pointing.group),  attribute result { text }?,  ( ( [equiv](#TEI.equiv) | [gloss](#TEI.gloss) )\*, ( [tei\_join](#TEI.tei_join) | [ptr](#TEI.ptr) )+ ) } |

## <langKnowledge>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<langKnowledge>** (language knowledge) summarizes the state of a person's linguistic knowledge, either as prose or by a list of <langKnown> elements. [[13.3.2.1. Personal Characteristics](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPERSEpc)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.typed (type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | att.typed | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Sample values include:** | **listening**  **speaking**  **reading**  **writing** | | | **tags** | supplies one or more valid language tags for the languages specified   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.language separated by whitespace | | **Note** | This attribute should be supplied only if the element contains no <langKnown> children. Its values are language ‘tags’ as defined in [RFC 4646](http://www.rfc-editor.org/rfc/rfc4646.txt) or its successor | | |
| **Member of** | model.persStateLike |
| **Contained by** | **namesdates:** person personGrp persona |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **linking:** ab  **namesdates:** langKnown |
| **Example** | <**langKnowledge** **tags**="en-GB fr">  <**p**>British English and French</**p**> </**langKnowledge**> |
| **Example** | <**langKnowledge**>  <**langKnown** **level**="H" **tag**="en-GB">British English</**langKnown**>  <**langKnown** **level**="M" **tag**="fr">French</**langKnown**> </**langKnowledge**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <elementRef key="precision"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <alternate>    <classRef key="model.pLike"/>    <elementRef key="langKnown"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>   </alternate>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element langKnowledge {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.datable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.datable),  [tei\_att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.editLike),  [tei\_att.typed.attribute.subtype](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  attribute type { text }?,  attribute tags { list { + } }?,  ( [precision](#TEI.precision)\*, ( [tei\_model.pLike](#TEI.tei_model.pLike) | [tei\_langKnown](#TEI.tei_langKnown)+ ) ) } |

## <langKnown>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<langKnown>** (language known) summarizes the state of a person's linguistic competence, i.e., knowledge of a single language. [[15.2.2. The Participant Description](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHPA)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **tag** | supplies a valid language tag for the language concerned.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Required | | **Datatype** | teidata.language | | **Note** | The value for this attribute should be a language ‘tag’ as defined in [BCP 47](https://tools.ietf.org/html/bcp47). | | | **level** | a code indicating the person's level of knowledge for this language   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.word | | |
| **Contained by** | **namesdates:** langKnowledge |
| **May contain** | **core:** q title  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName persPronouns placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  character data |
| **Example** | <**langKnown** **level**="H" **tag**="en-GB">British English</**langKnown**> <**langKnown** **level**="M" **tag**="fr">French</**langKnown**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element langKnown {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.datable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.datable),  [tei\_att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.editLike),  attribute tag { text },  attribute level { text }?,  [tei\_macro.phraseSeq.limited](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq.limited)} |

## <link>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<link>** (link) defines an association or hypertextual link among elements or passages, of some type not more precisely specifiable by other elements. [[16.1. Links](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SAPT)] | |
| **Module** | linking |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.global.meta |
| **Contained by** | **core:** p q said title  **linking:** ab linkGrp seg standOff  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education event faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality object objectName occupation offset org orgName persName persPronouns person personGrp persona place placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **textstructure:** body text |
| **May contain** | Empty element |
| **Note** | This element should only be used to encode associations not otherwise provided for by more specific elements.  The location of this element within a document has no significance, unless it is included within a <linkGrp>, in which case it may inherit the value of the *@type* attribute from the value given on the <linkGrp>. |
| **Example** | <**s** **n**="1">The state Supreme Court has refused to release <**rs** **xml:id**="R1">   <**rs** **xml:id**="R2">Rahway State Prison</**rs**> inmate</**rs**>  <**rs** **xml:id**="R3">James Scott</**rs**> on bail.</**s**> <**s** **n**="2">  <**rs** **xml:id**="R4">The fighter</**rs**> is serving 30-40 years  for a 1975 armed robbery conviction in <**rs** **xml:id**="R5">the penitentiary</**rs**>. </**s**> <!-- ... --> <**linkGrp** **type**="periphrasis">  <**link** **target**="#R1 #R3 #R4"/>  <**link** **target**="#R2 #R5"/> </**linkGrp**> |
| **Schematron** | <sch:assert test="contains(normalize-space(@target),' ')">You must supply at least two values for @target or on <sch:name/> </sch:assert> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <empty/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element link {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.pointing.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.pointing),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  empty } |

## <linkGrp>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<linkGrp>** (link group) defines a collection of associations or hypertextual links. [[16.1. Links](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SAPT)] | |
| **Module** | linking |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.pointing.group (@domains, @targFunc) (att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate)) (att.typed (@type, @subtype)) |
| **Member of** | model.global.meta |
| **Contained by** | **core:** p q said title  **linking:** ab seg standOff  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education event faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality object objectName occupation offset org orgName persName persPronouns person personGrp persona place placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **textstructure:** body text |
| **May contain** | **linking:** link |
| **Note** | May contain one or more <link> or <ptr> elements.  A web or link group is an administrative convenience, which should be used to collect a set of links together for any purpose, not simply to supply a default value for the *@type* attribute. |
| **Example** | <**linkGrp** **type**="translation">  <**link** **target**="#CCS1 #SW1"/>  <**link** **target**="#CCS2 #SW2"/>  <**link** **target**="#CCS #SW"/> </**linkGrp**> <**div** **type**="volume" **xml:id**="CCS"  **xml:lang**="fr">  <**p**>   <**s** **xml:id**="CCS1">Longtemps, je me suis couché de bonne heure.</**s**>   <**s** **xml:id**="CCS2">Parfois, à peine ma bougie éteinte, mes yeux se fermaient si vite que je n'avais pas le temps de me dire : "Je m'endors."</**s**>  </**p**> <!-- ... --> </**div**> <**div** **type**="volume" **xml:id**="SW" **xml:lang**="en">  <**p**>   <**s** **xml:id**="SW1">For a long time I used to go to bed early.</**s**>   <**s** **xml:id**="SW2">Sometimes, when I had put out my candle, my eyes would close so quickly that I had not even time to say "I'm going to sleep."</**s**>  </**p**> <!-- ... --> </**div**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="1">   <elementRef key="link"/>   <elementRef key="ptr"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element linkGrp {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.pointing.group.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.pointing.group),  ( [tei\_link](#TEI.tei_link) | [ptr](#TEI.ptr) )+ } |

## <listAnnotation>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<listAnnotation>** contains a list of annotations, typically encoded as <annotation>, <annotationBlock>, or <note>, possibly organized with nested <listAnnotation> elements. [[16.10. The standOff Container](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SASOstdf)] | |
| **Module** | linking |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.notated (@notation) att.declaring (@decls) |
| **Member of** | model.standOffPart |
| **Contained by** | **linking:** listAnnotation standOff |
| **May contain** | **linking:** annotation listAnnotation |
| **Note** | The enclosed annotations may use the general-purpose <note> element; or, for annotations pertaining to transcriptions of speech, the special-purpose <annotationBlock> element; or the <annotation> element, which is intended to map cleanly onto the [Web Annotation Data Model](#WADM). |
| **Example** | <**standOff**>  <**listAnnotation**>   <**note** **place**="margin" **resp**="#STC"    **target**="#RotAM.4.15" **type**="gloss"> The spell begins to      break </**note**>   <**note** **place**="bottom" **resp**="#JLL"    **target**="#RotAM.4.15"> The turning point of the poem...   </**note**>  </**listAnnotation**> </**standOff**> <!-- ... --> <**lg** **rhyme**="ABCB" **xml:id**="RotAM.4.15">  <**l**>The self-same moment I could pray;</**l**>  <**l**>And from my neck so free</**l**>  <**l**>The albatross fell off, and sank</**l**>  <**l**>Like lead into the sea.</**l**> </**lg**> |
| **Example** | <**listAnnotation**>  <**annotationBlock** **corresp**="#u1">   <**spanGrp** **type**="pos">    <**span** **from**="#e14.w1" **to**="#e14.w1">CONJ</**span**>    <**span** **from**="#e14.w2" **to**="#e14.w2">RELPRO</**span**>    <**span** **from**="#e14.w3" **to**="#e14.w3">V</**span**>   </**spanGrp**>   <**spanGrp** **type**="prosody">    <**span** **from**="#T0" **to**="#T1">faster</**span**>   </**spanGrp**>  </**annotationBlock**> <!-- ... annotationBlocks for #u2 through #u27 here --> </**listAnnotation**> |
| **Example** | <**listAnnotation**>  <**annotation** **motivation**="commenting"   **target**="#match(bg-c1p1s1,'Gallia.\*omnis')" **xml:id**="bgann1">   <**respStmt**>    <**resp**>creator</**resp**>    <**persName**>Francis Kelsey</**persName**>   </**respStmt**>   <**note**>‘Gaul as a whole,’ contrasted with Gaul in the narrower sense, or Celtic Gaul; Celtic Gaul also is often called Gallia.</**note**>  </**annotation**>  <**annotation** **motivation**="commenting"   **target**="#match(bg-c1p1s1,'Gallia.\*divisa')" **xml:id**="bgann2">   <**respStmt**>    <**resp**>creator</**resp**>    <**persName**>Rice Holmes</**persName**>   </**respStmt**>   <**note**>Gallia...divisa: Notice the order of the words. ‘Gaul, taken as a whole, is divided’.</**note**>  </**annotation**>  <**annotation** **motivation**="commenting"   **target**="#match(bg-c1p1s1,'Belgae')" **xml:id**="bgann3">   <**respStmt**>    <**resp**>creator</**resp**>    <**persName**>Arthur Tappan Walker</**persName**>   </**respStmt**>   <**note**>Belgae -arum m., the Belgae or Belgians</**note**>  </**annotation**>  <**annotation** **motivation**="commenting"   **target**="#match(bg-c1p1s1,'Aquitani')" **xml:id**="bgann4">   <**respStmt**>    <**resp**>creator</**resp**>    <**persName**>Arthur Tappan Walker</**persName**>   </**respStmt**>   <**note**>Aquitani, -orum m.: the Aquitani, inhabiting southwestern Gaul</**note**>  </**annotation**>  <**annotation** **motivation**="commenting"   **target**="#match(bg-c1p1s1,'Celtae')" **xml:id**="bgann5">   <**respStmt**>    <**resp**>creator</**resp**>    <**persName**>Arthur Tappan Walker</**persName**>   </**respStmt**>   <**note**>Celtae, -arum m: the Celtae or Celts</**note**>  </**annotation**>  <**annotation** **motivation**="commenting"   **target**="#match(bg-c1p1s2,'Gallos(.|\n)\*dividit')" **xml:id**="bgann6">   <**respStmt**>    <**resp**>creator</**resp**>    <**persName**>William Francis Allen</**persName**>    <**persName**>Joseph Henry Allen</**persName**>    <**persName**>Harry Pratt Judson</**persName**>   </**respStmt**>   <**note**>the verb is singular, because the two rivers make one boundary; as we should say,      ‘is divided by the line of the Seine and Marne.’</**note**>  </**annotation**> </**listAnnotation**> <!-- Elsewhere in the document --> <**text**>  <**body**>   <**div** **type**="edition">    <**div** **n**="1" **subtype**="chapter"     **type**="textpart" **xml:id**="bg-c1">     <**p** **n**="1" **xml:id**="bg-c1p1">      <**seg** **n**="1" **xml:id**="bg-c1p1s1">Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres, quarum unam incolunt Belgae, aliam            Aquitani, tertiam qui ipsorum lingua Celtae, nostra Galli appellantur.</**seg**>      <**seg** **n**="2" **xml:id**="bg-c1p1s2">Hi omnes lingua, institutis, legibus inter se differunt. Gallos ab Aquitanis            Garumna flumen, a Belgis Matrona et Sequana dividit.</**seg**> <!-- ... -->     </**p**>    </**div**>   </**div**>  </**body**> </**text**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <classRef key="model.headLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <classRef key="model.labelLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="1">    <classRef key="model.annotationLike"/>    <elementRef key="listAnnotation"/>   </alternate>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element listAnnotation {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_att.notated.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.notated),  [tei\_att.declaring.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.declaring),  (  [tei\_model.headLike](#TEI.tei_model.headLike)\*,  [tei\_model.labelLike](#TEI.tei_model.labelLike)\*,  ( [tei\_model.annotationLike](#TEI.tei_model.annotationLike) | [tei\_listAnnotation](#TEI.tei_listAnnotation) )+  ) } |

## <listEvent>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<listEvent>** (list of events) contains a list of descriptions, each of which provides information about an identifiable event. [[13.3.1. Basic Principles](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPERSbp)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declarable (@default) att.sortable (@sortKey) |
| **Member of** | model.eventLike model.listLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** p q said title  **header:** sourceDesc  **linking:** ab seg standOff  **namesdates:** listEvent occupation org person personGrp persona place  **textstructure:** body |
| **May contain** | **namesdates:** event listEvent listRelation relation |
| **Example** | <**listEvent**>  <**head**>Battles of the American Civil War: Kentucky</**head**>  <**event** **when**="1861-09-19" **xml:id**="event01">   <**label**>Barbourville</**label**>   <**desc**>The Battle of Barbourville was one of the early engagements of      the American Civil War. It occurred September 19, 1861, in Knox      County, Kentucky during the campaign known as the Kentucky Confederate      Offensive. The battle is considered the first Confederate victory in      the commonwealth, and threw a scare into Federal commanders, who      rushed troops to central Kentucky in an effort to repel the invasion,      which was finally thwarted at the <**ref** **target**="#event02">Battle of        Camp Wildcat</**ref**> in October.</**desc**>  </**event**>  <**event** **when**="1861-10-21" **xml:id**="event02">   <**label**>Camp Wild Cat</**label**>   <**desc**>The Battle of Camp Wildcat (also known as Wildcat Mountain and Camp      Wild Cat) was one of the early engagements of the American Civil      War. It occurred October 21, 1861, in northern Laurel County, Kentucky      during the campaign known as the Kentucky Confederate Offensive. The      battle is considered one of the very first Union victories, and marked      the first engagement of troops in the commonwealth of Kentucky.</**desc**>  </**event**>  <**event** **from**="1864-06-11" **to**="1864-06-12"   **xml:id**="event03">   <**label**>Cynthiana</**label**>   <**desc**>The Battle of Cynthiana (or Kellar’s Bridge) was an engagement      during the American Civil War that was fought on June 11 and 12, 1864,      in Harrison County, Kentucky, near the town of Cynthiana. A part of      Confederate Brigadier General John Hunt Morgan's 1864 Raid into      Kentucky, the battle resulted in a victory by Union forces over the      raiders and saved the town from capture.</**desc**>  </**event**> </**listEvent**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <classRef key="model.headLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <elementRef key="desc"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <elementRef key="relation" maxOccurs="1"     minOccurs="1"/>    <elementRef key="listRelation"     maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>   </alternate>   <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="1">    <classRef key="model.eventLike"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="0">     <elementRef key="relation"      maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>     <elementRef key="listRelation"      maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>    </alternate>   </sequence>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element listEvent {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.declarable),  [tei\_att.sortable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.sortable),  (  [tei\_model.headLike](#TEI.tei_model.headLike)\*,  [desc](#TEI.desc)\*,  ( [tei\_relation](#TEI.tei_relation) | [tei\_listRelation](#TEI.tei_listRelation) )\*,  ( [tei\_model.eventLike](#TEI.tei_model.eventLike)+, ( [tei\_relation](#TEI.tei_relation) | [tei\_listRelation](#TEI.tei_listRelation) )\* )+  ) } |

## <listNym>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<listNym>** (list of canonical names) contains a list of nyms, that is, standardized names for any thing. [[13.3.6. Names and Nyms](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDNYM)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declarable (@default) att.sortable (@sortKey) |
| **Member of** | model.listLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** p q said title  **header:** sourceDesc  **linking:** ab seg standOff  **namesdates:** listNym occupation  **textstructure:** body |
| **May contain** | **namesdates:** listNym listRelation nym relation |
| **Note** | The type attribute may be used to distinguish lists of names of a particular type if convenient. |
| **Example** | <**listNym** **type**="floral">  <**nym** **xml:id**="ROSE">   <**form**>Rose</**form**>  </**nym**>  <**nym** **xml:id**="DAISY">   <**form**>Daisy</**form**>   <**etym**>Contraction of <**mentioned**>day's eye</**mentioned**>   </**etym**>  </**nym**>  <**nym** **xml:id**="HTHR">   <**form**>Heather</**form**>  </**nym**> </**listNym**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <classRef key="model.headLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <elementRef key="desc"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <elementRef key="relation" maxOccurs="1"     minOccurs="1"/>    <elementRef key="listRelation"     maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>   </alternate>   <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="1">    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="1">     <elementRef key="nym" maxOccurs="1"      minOccurs="1"/>     <elementRef key="listNym" maxOccurs="1"      minOccurs="1"/>    </alternate>    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="0">     <elementRef key="relation"      maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>     <elementRef key="listRelation"      maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>    </alternate>   </sequence>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element listNym {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.declarable),  [tei\_att.sortable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.sortable),  (  [tei\_model.headLike](#TEI.tei_model.headLike)\*,  [desc](#TEI.desc)\*,  ( [tei\_relation](#TEI.tei_relation) | [tei\_listRelation](#TEI.tei_listRelation) )\*,  ( ( [tei\_nym](#TEI.tei_nym) | [tei\_listNym](#TEI.tei_listNym) )+, ( [tei\_relation](#TEI.tei_relation) | [tei\_listRelation](#TEI.tei_listRelation) )\* )+  ) } |

## <listObject>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<listObject>** (list of objects) contains a list of descriptions, each of which provides information about an identifiable physical object. [[13.3.5. Objects](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDOBJ)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declarable (@default) att.sortable (@sortKey) |
| **Member of** | model.listLike model.objectLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** p q said title  **header:** sourceDesc  **linking:** ab seg standOff  **namesdates:** listObject occupation  **textstructure:** body |
| **May contain** | **namesdates:** listObject listRelation object relation |
| **Note** | The *@type* attribute may be used to distinguish different types of objects. |
| **Example** | <**listObject**>  <**object** **xml:id**="AlfredJewel">   <**objectIdentifier**>    <**country**>United Kingdom</**country**>    <**region**>Oxfordshire</**region**>    <**settlement**>Oxford</**settlement**>    <**institution**>University of Oxford</**institution**>    <**repository**>Ashmolean Museum</**repository**>    <**collection**>English Treasures</**collection**>    <**idno** **type**="ashmolean">AN1836p.135.371</**idno**>    <**idno** **type**="wikipedia">https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Alfred\_Jewel</**idno**>    <**objectName**>Alfred Jewel</**objectName**>   </**objectIdentifier**>   <**physDesc**>    <**p**> The Alfred Jewel is about 6.4 cm in length and is made of combination of filigreed <**material**>gold</**material**>        surrounding a polished teardrop shaped piece of transparent <**material**>quartz</**material**>. Underneath the rock crystal        is a cloisonné enamel image of a man with ecclesiastical symbols. The sides of the jewel holding the crystal in        place contain an openwork inscription saying "AELFRED MEC HEHT GEWYRCAN", meaning 'Alfred ordered me made'. </**p**>   </**physDesc**>   <**history**>    <**origin**>It is generally accepted that the Alfred Jewel dates from the <**origDate**>late 9th Century</**origDate**> and was        most likely made in <**origPlace**>England</**origPlace**>. </**origin**>    <**provenance** **when**="1693">The jewel was discovered in 1693 at Petherton Park, North Petherton in the English county of        Somerset, on land owned by Sir Thomas Wroth. North Petherton is about 8 miles away from Athelney, where King Alfred        founded a monastery. </**provenance**>    <**provenance** **when**="1698">A description of the Alfred Jewel was first published in 1698, in the Philosophical        Transactions of the Royal Society.</**provenance**>    <**acquisition**> It was bequeathed to Oxford University by Colonel Nathaniel Palmer (c. 1661-1718) and today is in the        Ashmolean Museum in Oxford. </**acquisition**>   </**history**>  </**object**> </**listObject**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <classRef key="model.headLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <elementRef key="desc"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <elementRef key="relation" maxOccurs="1"     minOccurs="1"/>    <elementRef key="listRelation"     maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>   </alternate>   <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="1">    <classRef key="model.objectLike"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="0">     <elementRef key="relation"      maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>     <elementRef key="listRelation"      maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>    </alternate>   </sequence>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element listObject {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.declarable),  [tei\_att.sortable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.sortable),  (  [tei\_model.headLike](#TEI.tei_model.headLike)\*,  [desc](#TEI.desc)\*,  ( [tei\_relation](#TEI.tei_relation) | [tei\_listRelation](#TEI.tei_listRelation) )\*,  ( [tei\_model.objectLike](#TEI.tei_model.objectLike)+, ( [tei\_relation](#TEI.tei_relation) | [tei\_listRelation](#TEI.tei_listRelation) )\* )+  ) } |

## <listOrg>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<listOrg>** (list of organizations) contains a list of elements, each of which provides information about an identifiable organization. [[13.2.2. Organizational Names](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDORG)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declarable (@default) att.sortable (@sortKey) |
| **Member of** | model.listLike model.orgPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** p q said title  **header:** sourceDesc  **linking:** ab seg standOff  **namesdates:** listOrg occupation org  **textstructure:** body |
| **May contain** | **namesdates:** listOrg listRelation org relation |
| **Note** | The type attribute may be used to distinguish lists of organizations of a particular type if convenient. |
| **Example** | <**listOrg**>  <**head**>Libyans</**head**>  <**org**>   <**orgName**>Adyrmachidae</**orgName**>   <**desc**>These people have, in most points, the same customs as the Egyptians, but      use the costume of the Libyans. Their women wear on each leg a ring made of      bronze [...]</**desc**>  </**org**>  <**org**>   <**orgName**>Nasamonians</**orgName**>   <**desc**>In summer they leave their flocks and herds upon the sea-shore, and go up      the country to a place called Augila, where they gather the dates from the      palms [...]</**desc**>  </**org**>  <**org**>   <**orgName**>Garamantians</**orgName**>   <**desc**>[...] avoid all society or intercourse with their fellow-men, have no      weapon of war, and do not know how to defend themselves. [...]</**desc**> <!-- ... -->  </**org**> </**listOrg**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <classRef key="model.headLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <elementRef key="desc"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <elementRef key="relation" maxOccurs="1"     minOccurs="1"/>    <elementRef key="listRelation"     maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>   </alternate>   <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="1">    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="1">     <elementRef key="org" maxOccurs="1"      minOccurs="1"/>     <elementRef key="listOrg" maxOccurs="1"      minOccurs="1"/>    </alternate>    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="0">     <elementRef key="relation"      maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>     <elementRef key="listRelation"      maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>    </alternate>   </sequence>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element listOrg {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.declarable),  [tei\_att.sortable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.sortable),  (  [tei\_model.headLike](#TEI.tei_model.headLike)\*,  [desc](#TEI.desc)\*,  ( [tei\_relation](#TEI.tei_relation) | [tei\_listRelation](#TEI.tei_listRelation) )\*,  ( ( [tei\_org](#TEI.tei_org) | [tei\_listOrg](#TEI.tei_listOrg) )+, ( [tei\_relation](#TEI.tei_relation) | [tei\_listRelation](#TEI.tei_listRelation) )\* )+  ) } |

## <listPerson>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<listPerson>** (list of persons) contains a list of descriptions, each of which provides information about an identifiable person or a group of people, for example the participants in a language interaction, or the people referred to in a historical source. [[13.3.2. The Person Element](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPERSE) [15.2. Contextual Information](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAH) [2.4. The Profile Description](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD4) [15.3.2. Declarable Elements](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS2)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declarable (@default) att.sortable (@sortKey) |
| **Member of** | model.listLike model.orgPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** p q said title  **header:** sourceDesc  **linking:** ab seg standOff  **namesdates:** listPerson occupation org  **textstructure:** body |
| **May contain** | **namesdates:** listPerson listRelation org person personGrp relation |
| **Note** | The *@type* attribute may be used to distinguish lists of people of a particular type if convenient. |
| **Example** | <**listPerson** **type**="respondents">  <**personGrp** **xml:id**="PXXX"/>  <**person** **age**="mid" **sex**="2" **xml:id**="P1234"/>  <**person** **age**="mid" **sex**="1" **xml:id**="P4332"/>  <**listRelation**>   <**relation** **mutual**="#P1234 #P4332"    **name**="spouse" **type**="personal"/>  </**listRelation**> </**listPerson**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <classRef key="model.headLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <elementRef key="desc"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <elementRef key="relation" maxOccurs="1"     minOccurs="1"/>    <elementRef key="listRelation"     maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>   </alternate>   <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="1">    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="1">     <classRef key="model.personLike"      maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>     <elementRef key="listPerson"      maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>    </alternate>    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="0">     <elementRef key="relation"      maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>     <elementRef key="listRelation"      maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>    </alternate>   </sequence>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element listPerson {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.declarable),  [tei\_att.sortable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.sortable),  (  [tei\_model.headLike](#TEI.tei_model.headLike)\*,  [desc](#TEI.desc)\*,  ( [tei\_relation](#TEI.tei_relation) | [tei\_listRelation](#TEI.tei_listRelation) )\*,  (  ( [tei\_model.personLike](#TEI.tei_model.personLike) | [tei\_listPerson](#TEI.tei_listPerson) )+,  ( [tei\_relation](#TEI.tei_relation) | [tei\_listRelation](#TEI.tei_listRelation) )\*  )+  ) } |

## <listPlace>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<listPlace>** (list of places) contains a list of places, optionally followed by a list of relationships (other than containment) defined amongst them. [[2.2.7. The Source Description](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD3) [13.3.4. Places](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDGEOG)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declarable (@default) att.sortable (@sortKey) |
| **Member of** | model.listLike model.orgPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** p q said title  **header:** sourceDesc  **linking:** ab seg standOff  **namesdates:** listPlace occupation org place  **textstructure:** body |
| **May contain** | **namesdates:** listPlace listRelation place relation |
| **Example** | <**listPlace** **type**="offshoreIslands">  <**place**>   <**placeName**>La roche qui pleure</**placeName**>  </**place**>  <**place**>   <**placeName**>Ile aux cerfs</**placeName**>  </**place**> </**listPlace**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <classRef key="model.headLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <elementRef key="desc"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <elementRef key="relation" maxOccurs="1"     minOccurs="1"/>    <elementRef key="listRelation"     maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>   </alternate>   <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="1">    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="1">     <classRef key="model.placeLike"      maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>     <elementRef key="listPlace"      maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>    </alternate>    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="0">     <elementRef key="relation"      maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>     <elementRef key="listRelation"      maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>    </alternate>   </sequence>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element listPlace {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.declarable),  [tei\_att.sortable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.sortable),  (  [tei\_model.headLike](#TEI.tei_model.headLike)\*,  [desc](#TEI.desc)\*,  ( [tei\_relation](#TEI.tei_relation) | [tei\_listRelation](#TEI.tei_listRelation) )\*,  (  ( [tei\_model.placeLike](#TEI.tei_model.placeLike) | [tei\_listPlace](#TEI.tei_listPlace) )+,  ( [tei\_relation](#TEI.tei_relation) | [tei\_listRelation](#TEI.tei_listRelation) )\*  )+  ) } |

## <listRelation>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<listRelation>** provides information about relationships identified amongst people, places, and organizations, either informally as prose or as formally expressed relation links. [[13.3.2.3. Personal Relationships](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPERSREL)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.sortable (@sortKey) |
| **Member of** | model.listLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** p q said title  **header:** sourceDesc  **linking:** ab seg standOff  **namesdates:** listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation occupation  **textstructure:** body |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **linking:** ab  **namesdates:** listRelation relation |
| **Note** | May contain a prose description organized as paragraphs, or a sequence of <relation> elements. |
| **Example** | <**listPerson**>  <**person** **xml:id**="pp1"> <!-- data about person pp1 -->  </**person**>  <**person** **xml:id**="pp2"> <!-- data about person pp1 -->  </**person**> <!-- more person (pp3, pp4) elements here -->  <**listRelation** **type**="personal">   <**relation** **active**="#pp1 #pp2"    **name**="parent" **passive**="#pp3 #pp4"/>   <**relation** **mutual**="#pp1 #pp2"    **name**="spouse"/>  </**listRelation**>  <**listRelation** **type**="social">   <**relation** **active**="#pp1" **name**="employer"    **passive**="#pp3 #pp5 #pp6 #pp7"/>  </**listRelation**> </**listPerson**>  The persons with identifiers pp1 and pp2 are the parents of pp3 and pp4; they are also married to each other; pp1 is the employer of pp3, pp5, pp6, and pp7. |
| **Example** | <**listPerson**>  <**person** **xml:id**="en\_pp1"> <!-- data about person en\_pp1 -->  </**person**>  <**person** **xml:id**="en\_pp2"> <!-- data about person en\_pp2 -->  </**person**> <!-- more person (en\_pp3, en\_pp4) elements here --> </**listPerson**> <**listPlace**>  <**place** **xml:id**="en\_pl1"> <!-- data about place en\_pl1 -->  </**place**> <!-- more place (en\_pl2, en\_pl3) elements here --> </**listPlace**> <**listRelation**>  <**relation** **active**="#en\_pp1 #en\_pp2"   **name**="residence" **passive**="#en\_pl1"/> </**listRelation**>  The persons with identifiers en\_pp1 and en\_pp2 live in en\_pl1. |
| **Example** | <**listRelation**>  <**p**>All speakers are members of the Ceruli family, born in Naples.</**p**> </**listRelation**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <classRef key="model.headLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <elementRef key="desc"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <alternate maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1">    <classRef key="model.pLike"/>    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="1">     <elementRef key="relation"      maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>     <elementRef key="listRelation"      maxOccurs="1" minOccurs="1"/>    </alternate>   </alternate>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element listRelation {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_att.sortable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.sortable),  (  [tei\_model.headLike](#TEI.tei_model.headLike)\*,  [desc](#TEI.desc)\*,  ( [tei\_model.pLike](#TEI.tei_model.pLike) | ( [tei\_relation](#TEI.tei_relation) | [tei\_listRelation](#TEI.tei_listRelation) )+ )  ) } |

## <location>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<location>** (location) defines the location of a place as a set of geographical coordinates, in terms of other named geo-political entities, or as an address. [[13.3.4. Places](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDGEOG)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) |
| **Member of** | model.placeStateLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** p q said title  **linking:** ab seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset org orgName persName persPronouns place placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname |
| **May contain** | **namesdates:** affiliation bloc country district geo geogFeat geogName offset placeName region settlement |
| **Example** | <**place**>  <**placeName**>Abbey Dore</**placeName**>  <**location**>   <**geo**>51.969604 -2.893146</**geo**>  </**location**> </**place**> |
| **Example** | <**place** **type**="building" **xml:id**="BGbuilding">  <**placeName**>Brasserie Georges</**placeName**>  <**location**>   <**country** **key**="FR"/>   <**settlement** **type**="city">Lyon</**settlement**>   <**district** **type**="arrondissement">IIème</**district**>   <**district** **type**="quartier">Perrache</**district**>   <**placeName** **type**="street">    <**num**>30</**num**>, Cours de Verdun</**placeName**>  </**location**> </**place**> |
| **Example** | <**place** **type**="imaginary">  <**placeName**>Atlantis</**placeName**>  <**location**>   <**offset**>beyond</**offset**>   <**placeName**>The Pillars of <**persName**>Hercules</**persName**>   </**placeName**>  </**location**> </**place**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <elementRef key="precision"/>   <classRef key="model.labelLike"/>   <classRef key="model.placeNamePart"/>   <classRef key="model.offsetLike"/>   <classRef key="model.measureLike"/>   <classRef key="model.addressLike"/>   <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>   <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element location {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_att.datable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.datable),  [tei\_att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.editLike),  (  [precision](#TEI.precision) | [tei\_model.labelLike](#TEI.tei_model.labelLike) | [tei\_model.placeNamePart](#TEI.tei_model.placeNamePart) | [tei\_model.offsetLike](#TEI.tei_model.offsetLike) | [tei\_model.measureLike](#TEI.tei_model.measureLike) | [tei\_model.addressLike](#TEI.tei_model.addressLike) | [tei\_model.noteLike](#TEI.tei_model.noteLike) | [tei\_model.biblLike](#TEI.tei_model.biblLike) )\* } |

## <nameLink>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<nameLink>** (name link) contains a connecting phrase or link used within a name but not regarded as part of it, such as van der or of. [[13.2.1. Personal Names](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPER)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.persNamePart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** p q said title  **linking:** ab seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset org orgName persName persPronouns placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname |
| **May contain** | **core:** q said title  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName persPronouns placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  character data |
| **Example** | <**persName**>  <**forename**>Frederick</**forename**>  <**nameLink**>van der</**nameLink**>  <**surname**>Tronck</**surname**> </**persName**> |
| **Example** | <**persName**>  <**forename**>Alfred</**forename**>  <**nameLink**>de</**nameLink**>  <**surname**>Musset</**surname**> </**persName**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element nameLink {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <nationality>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<nationality>** (nationality) contains an informal description of a person's present or past nationality or citizenship. [[15.2.2. The Participant Description](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHPA)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | att.typed | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Sample values include:** | **birth**  **naturalised**  **self-assigned** | | |
| **Member of** | model.persStateLike |
| **Contained by** | **namesdates:** person personGrp persona |
| **May contain** | **core:** q said title  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName persPronouns placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  character data |
| **Example** | <**nationality** **key**="US" **notBefore**="1966"> Obtained US Citizenship in 1966</**nationality**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element nationality {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.datable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.datable),  [tei\_att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.editLike),  [tei\_att.naming.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.naming),  [tei\_att.typed.attribute.subtype](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  attribute type { text }?,  [tei\_macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <nym>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<nym>** (canonical name) contains the definition for a canonical name or name component of any kind. [[13.3.6. Names and Nyms](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDNYM)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.sortable (@sortKey)   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **parts** | points to constituent nyms   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace | | |
| **Contained by** | **namesdates:** listNym nym |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **linking:** ab  **namesdates:** nym |
| **Example** | <**nym** **xml:id**="J452">  <**form**>   <**orth** **xml:lang**="en-US">Ian</**orth**>   <**orth** **xml:lang**="en-x-Scots">Iain</**orth**>  </**form**> </**nym**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <elementRef key="idno"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <classRef key="model.entryPart"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <classRef key="model.pLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <elementRef key="nym"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element nym {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_att.sortable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.sortable),  attribute parts { list { + } }?,  ( [idno](#TEI.idno)\*, [tei\_model.entryPart](#TEI.tei_model.entryPart)\*, [tei\_model.pLike](#TEI.tei_model.pLike)\*, [tei\_nym](#TEI.tei_nym)\* ) } |

## <object>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<object>** contains a description of a single identifiable physical object. [[13.3.5. Objects](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDOBJ)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declaring (@decls) att.docStatus (@status) att.canonical (@key, @ref) |
| **Member of** | model.objectLike |
| **Contained by** | **namesdates:** listObject object |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **linking:** ab link linkGrp  **namesdates:** object objectIdentifier |
| **Note** | The <object> element is a recent addition to the TEI P5 Guidelines as of version 3.5.0 and as such may be more prone to further revision in the next few releases as its use develops. This may be particularly evident where its contents have been borrowed from <msDesc> and have yet to be generalized from their use in the context of manuscript descriptions.  The <object> element may be used for describing any object, text-bearing or not, though where the textuality of the object is the primary concern or a collection is mostly composed of manuscripts, encoders may prefer the <msDesc> element (a more specific form of <object>) which may be used not only to describe manuscripts but any form of text-bearing objects such as early printed books. |
| **Example** | <**listObject**>  <**object** **xml:id**="Alfred\_Jewel">   <**objectIdentifier**>    <**country**>United Kingdom</**country**>    <**region**>Oxfordshire</**region**>    <**settlement**>Oxford</**settlement**>    <**institution**>University of Oxford</**institution**>    <**repository**>Ashmolean Museum</**repository**>    <**collection**>English Treasures</**collection**>    <**idno** **type**="ashmolean">AN1836p.135.371</**idno**>    <**idno** **type**="wikipedia">https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Alfred\_Jewel</**idno**>    <**objectName**>Alfred Jewel</**objectName**>   </**objectIdentifier**>   <**physDesc**>    <**p**> The Alfred Jewel is about 6.4 cm in length and is made of combination of filigreed <**material**>gold</**material**>        surrounding a polished teardrop shaped piece of transparent <**material**>quartz</**material**>. Underneath the rock        crystal is a cloisonné enamel image of a man with ecclesiastical symbols. The sides of the jewel holding the        crystal in place contain an openwork inscription saying "AELFRED MEC HEHT GEWYRCAN", meaning 'Alfred ordered        me made'. </**p**>   </**physDesc**>   <**history**>    <**origin**>It is generally accepted that the Alfred Jewel dates from the <**origDate**>late 9th Century</**origDate**> and        was most likely made in <**origPlace**>England</**origPlace**>. </**origin**>    <**provenance** **when**="1693">The jewel was discovered in 1693 at Petherton Park, North Petherton in the English        county of Somerset, on land owned by Sir Thomas Wroth. North Petherton is about 8 miles away from Athelney,        where King Alfred founded a monastery. </**provenance**>    <**provenance** **when**="1698">A description of the Alfred Jewel was first published in 1698, in the Philosophical        Transactions of the Royal Society.</**provenance**>    <**acquisition**> It was bequeathed to Oxford University by Colonel Nathaniel Palmer (c. 1661-1718) and today is in        the Ashmolean Museum in Oxford. </**acquisition**>   </**history**>  </**object**> </**listObject**> <!-- Elsewhere in document --> <**p**> The <**objectName** **ref**="#MinsterLovellJewel">Minster Lovell Jewel</**objectName**> is probably the most similar to the <**objectName** **ref**="#Alfred\_Jewel">Alfred Jewel</**objectName**> and was found in <**placeName** **ref**="#MinsterLovell">Minster    Lovell</**placeName**> in <**placeName** **ref**="#Oxfordshire">Oxfordshire</**placeName**> and is kept at the <**orgName** **ref**="#AshmoleanMuseum">Ashmolean Museum</**orgName**>. </**p**> |
| **Example** | <**listObject**>  <**object** **xml:id**="MaskOfTutankhamun">   <**objectIdentifier**>    <**objectName** **xml:lang**="en">Mask of Tutankhamun</**objectName**>    <**idno** **type**="carter">256a</**idno**>    <**idno** **type**="JournalD'Entrée">60672</**idno**>    <**idno** **type**="exhibition">220</**idno**>    <**institution**>Museum of Egyptian Antiquities</**institution**>    <**address**>     <**street**>15 Meret Basha</**street**>     <**district**>Ismailia</**district**>     <**settlement**>Cairo</**settlement**>     <**country**>Egypt</**country**>     <**location**>      <**geo**>30.047778, 31.233333</**geo**>     </**location**>    </**address**>   </**objectIdentifier**>   <**msContents**>    <**p**>The back and shoulders of the mask is inscribed with a protective spell in Egyptian hieroglyphs formed of ten        vertical and horizontal lines. This spell first appeared on masks in the Middle Kingdom at least 500 years        before Tutankhamun, and comes from chapter 151 of the <**title**>Book of the Dead</**title**>.</**p**>   </**msContents**>   <**physDesc**>    <**p**> The mask of Tutankhamun is 54cm x 39.3cm x 49cm. It is constructed from two layers of high-karat gold that        varies in thickness from 1.5-3mm. It weighs approximately 10.23kg and x-ray crystallography shows that it is        composed of two alloys of gold with a lighter 18.4 karat shade being used for the face and neck while a heavier        22.5 karat gold was used for the rest of the mask.</**p**>    <**p**>In the mask Tutankhamun wears a nemes headcloth which has the royal insignia of a cobra (Wadjet) and vulture        (Nekhbet) on it. These are thought respectively to symbolise Tutankhamun's rule of both Lower Egypt and Upper        Egypt. His ears are pierced for earrings. The mask has rich inlays of coloured glass and gemstones, including        lapis lazuli surrounding the eye and eyebrows, quartz for the eyes, obsidian for the pupils. The broad collar is        made up of carnelian, feldspar, turquoise, amazonite, faience and other stones.</**p**>   </**physDesc**>   <**history**>    <**origin**>     <**p**>The mask of Tutankhamun was created in <**origPlace**>Egypt</**origPlace**> around <**origDate** **type**="circa" **when**="-1323">1323 BC</**origDate**>. It is a death mask of the 18th-dynasty ancient Egyptian Pharaoh Tutankhamun          who reigned 1332–1323 BC. </**p**>    </**origin**>    <**provenance**>     <**p**>The mask of Tutankhamun was found in his burial chamber at Theban Necropolis in the Valley of the Kings in          1922. On 28 October 1925 the excavation team led by English archaeologist Howard Carter opened the heavy          sarcophagus and three coffins and were the first people in around 3,250 years to see the mask of Tutankhamun.          Carter wrote in his diary: <**quote**> The pins removed, the lid was raised. The penultimate scene was disclosed –            a very neatly wrapped mummy of the young king, with golden mask of sad but tranquil expression, symbolizing            Osiris … the mask bears that god's attributes, but the likeness is that of Tut.Ankh.Amen – placid and            beautiful, with the same features as we find upon his statues and coffins. The mask has fallen slightly            back, thus its gaze is straight up to the heavens. </**quote**>     </**p**>    </**provenance**>    <**acquisition**> In December 1925, the mask was removed from the tomb, placed in a crate and transported 635        kilometres (395 mi) to the Egyptian Museum in Cairo, where it remains on public display. </**acquisition**>   </**history**>   <**additional**>    <**adminInfo**>     <**custodialHist**>      <**custEvent** **when**="1944">When it was discovered in 1925, the 2.5kg narrow gold beard was no longer attached to            the mask and was reattached to the chin by use of a wooden dowel in 1944.</**custEvent**>      <**custEvent** **when**="2014-08"> In August 2014 when the mask was removed from its display case for cleaning, the            beard fell off again. Those working in the museum unadvisedly used a quick-drying epoxy to attempt to fix            it, but left the beard off-centre. </**custEvent**>      <**custEvent** **when**="2015-01">The damage was noticed and repaired in January 2015 by a German-Egyptian team who            used beeswax, a material known to be used as adhesives by the ancient Egyptians.</**custEvent**>     </**custodialHist**>    </**adminInfo**>   </**additional**>  </**object**> </**listObject**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <elementRef key="objectIdentifier"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>   <classRef key="model.headLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <alternate>    <classRef key="model.pLike"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>    <sequence>     <elementRef key="msContents"      minOccurs="0"/>     <elementRef key="physDesc"      minOccurs="0"/>     <elementRef key="history" minOccurs="0"/>     <elementRef key="additional"      minOccurs="0"/>    </sequence>   </alternate>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>    <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>    <elementRef key="linkGrp"/>    <elementRef key="link"/>   </alternate>   <elementRef key="object" minOccurs="0"/>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element object {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.sortable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.sortable),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_att.declaring.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.declaring),  [tei\_att.docStatus.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.docStatus),  [tei\_att.canonical.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.canonical),  (  [tei\_objectIdentifier](#TEI.tei_objectIdentifier)+,  [tei\_model.headLike](#TEI.tei_model.headLike)\*,  ( [tei\_model.pLike](#TEI.tei_model.pLike)\* | ( [msContents](#TEI.msContents)?, [physDesc](#TEI.physDesc)?, [history](#TEI.history)?, [additional](#TEI.additional)? ) ),  ( [tei\_model.noteLike](#TEI.tei_model.noteLike) | [tei\_model.biblLike](#TEI.tei_model.biblLike) | [tei\_linkGrp](#TEI.tei_linkGrp) | [tei\_link](#TEI.tei_link) )\*,  [tei\_object](#TEI.tei_object)?  ) } |

## <objectIdentifier>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<objectIdentifier>** (object identifier) groups one or more identifiers or pieces of locating information concerning a single object. [[13.3.5. Objects](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDOBJ)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Contained by** | **namesdates:** object |
| **May contain** | **namesdates:** bloc country district geogName objectName placeName region settlement |
| **Example** | <**objectIdentifier**>  <**country**>United Kingdom</**country**>  <**region**>Oxfordshire</**region**>  <**settlement**>Oxford</**settlement**>  <**institution**>University of Oxford</**institution**>  <**repository**>Ashmolean Museum</**repository**>  <**collection**>English Treasures</**collection**>  <**idno** **type**="ashmolean">AN1836p.135.371</**idno**>  <**idno** **type**="wikipedia">https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Alfred\_Jewel</**idno**>  <**objectName**>Alfred Jewel</**objectName**> </**objectIdentifier**> |
| **Example** | <**object** **xml:id**="Excalibur-MultipleNames">  <**objectIdentifier**>   <**objectName** **type**="main">Excalibur</**objectName**>   <**objectName** **type**="alt">Caliburn</**objectName**>   <**objectName** **xml:lang**="cy">Caledfwlch</**objectName**>   <**objectName** **xml:lang**="cornu">Calesvol</**objectName**>   <**objectName** **xml:lang**="br">Kaledvoulc'h</**objectName**>   <**objectName** **xml:lang**="la">Caliburnus</**objectName**>   <**country**>Wales</**country**>  </**objectIdentifier**>  <**p**>Excalibur is the name for the legendary sword of King Arthur, in Welsh it is called Caledfwlch,    in Cornish it is called Calesvol, in Breton it is called Kaledvoulc'h, and in Latin it is called Caliburnus.    In some versions Excalibur's blade was engraved with phrases on opposite sides which in translation read:    "Take me up" and "Cast me away" (or similar).</**p**> </**object**> |
| **Schematron** | <s:report test="not(count(\*) gt 0)">An objectIdentifier must contain at minimum a single piece of locating or identifying information.</s:report> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <classRef key="model.placeNamePart"/>   <elementRef key="institution"/>   <elementRef key="repository"/>   <elementRef key="collection"/>   <elementRef key="idno"/>   <elementRef key="msName"/>   <elementRef key="objectName"/>   <elementRef key="altIdentifier"/>   <elementRef key="address"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element objectIdentifier {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  (  [tei\_model.placeNamePart](#TEI.tei_model.placeNamePart) | [institution](#TEI.institution) | [repository](#TEI.repository) | [collection](#TEI.collection) | [idno](#TEI.idno) | [msName](#TEI.msName) | [tei\_objectName](#TEI.tei_objectName) | [altIdentifier](#TEI.altIdentifier) | [address](#TEI.address) )\* } |

## <objectName>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<objectName>** (name of an object) contains a proper noun or noun phrase used to refer to an object. [[13.2.4. Object Names](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDOBJN)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.personal (@full, @sort) (att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) ) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.nameLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** p q said title  **linking:** ab seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectIdentifier objectName occupation offset org orgName persName persPronouns placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname |
| **May contain** | **core:** q said title  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName persPronouns placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  character data |
| **Example** | <**p**>   The <**objectName** **ref**="#MinsterLovellJewel">Minster Lovell Jewel</**objectName**> is probably the most similar to the <**objectName** **ref**="#AlfredJewel">Alfred Jewel</**objectName**> and was found in <**placeName** **ref**="#MinsterLovell">Minster    Lovell</**placeName**> in <**placeName** **ref**="#Oxfordshire">Oxfordshire</**placeName**> and is kept at the <**orgName** **ref**="#AshmoleanMuseum">Ashmolean Museum</**orgName**>. </**p**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element objectName {  [tei\_att.datable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.datable),  [tei\_att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.editLike),  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.personal.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.personal),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <occupation>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<occupation>** (occupation) contains an informal description of a person's trade, profession or occupation. [[15.2.2. The Participant Description](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHPA)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | att.typed | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Sample values include:** | **primary**  **other**  **paid**  **unpaid** | | | **scheme** | indicates the classification system or taxonomy in use, for example by supplying the identifier of a <taxonomy> element, or pointing to some other resource.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.pointer | | | **code** | identifies an occupation code defined within the classification system or taxonomy defined by the *@scheme* attribute.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.pointer | | |
| **Member of** | model.persStateLike |
| **Contained by** | **namesdates:** person personGrp persona |
| **May contain** | **core:** p q said title  **linking:** ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName persPronouns placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  character data |
| **Note** | The content of this element may be used as an alternative to the more formal specification made possible by its attributes; it may also be used to supplement the formal specification with commentary or clarification. |
| **Example** | <**occupation**>accountant</**occupation**> |
| **Example** | <**occupation** **code**="#acc"  **scheme**="#occupationtaxonomy">accountant</**occupation**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element occupation {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.datable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.datable),  [tei\_att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.editLike),  [tei\_att.naming.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.naming),  [tei\_att.typed.attribute.subtype](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  attribute type { text }?,  attribute scheme { text }?,  attribute code { text }?,  [tei\_macro.specialPara](#TEI.tei_macro.specialPara)} |

## <offset>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<offset>** (offset) marks that part of a relative temporal or spatial expression which indicates the direction of the offset between the two place names, dates, or times involved in the expression. [[13.2.3. Place Names](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPLAC)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) |
| **Member of** | model.offsetLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** p q said title  **linking:** ab seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown location nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset org orgName persName persPronouns placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname |
| **May contain** | **core:** q said title  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName persPronouns placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  character data |
| **Example** | <**placeName** **key**="NRPA1">  <**offset**>50 metres below the summit of</**offset**>  <**geogName**>   <**geogFeat**>Mount</**geogFeat**>   <**name**>Sinai</**name**>  </**geogName**> </**placeName**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element offset {  [tei\_att.datable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.datable),  [tei\_att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.editLike),  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.naming.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.naming),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_att.dimensions.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.dimensions),  [tei\_macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <org>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<org>** (organization) provides information about an identifiable organization such as a business, a tribe, or any other grouping of people. [[13.3.3. Organizational Data](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#ND-org)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.sortable (@sortKey)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **role** | specifies a primary role or classification for the organization.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace | | **Note** | Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, using arbitrary keywords such as artist, employer, familyGroup, or politicalParty, each of which should be associated with a definition. Such local definitions will typically be provided by a <desc> for each <valItem> element in the schema specification of the project's customization. | | |
| **Member of** | model.personLike |
| **Contained by** | **namesdates:** listOrg listPerson org |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **linking:** ab anchor link linkGrp  **namesdates:** addName bloc climate country district event forename genName geogFeat geogName listEvent listOrg listPerson listPlace location nameLink objectName offset org orgName persName persPronouns person personGrp place placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait |
| **Example** | <**org** **xml:id**="JAMs">  <**orgName**>Justified Ancients of Mummu</**orgName**>  <**desc**>An underground anarchist collective spearheaded by  <**persName**>Hagbard Celine</**persName**>, who fight the Illuminati    from a golden submarine, the <**name**>Leif Ericson</**name**>  </**desc**>  <**bibl**>   <**author**>Robert Shea</**author**>   <**author**>Robert Anton Wilson</**author**>   <**title**>The Illuminatus! Trilogy</**title**>  </**bibl**> </**org**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <classRef key="model.headLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <alternate>    <classRef key="model.pLike"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="0">     <classRef key="model.labelLike"/>     <classRef key="model.nameLike"/>     <classRef key="model.placeLike"/>     <classRef key="model.orgPart"/>     <classRef key="model.milestoneLike"/>    </alternate>   </alternate>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>    <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>    <elementRef key="linkGrp"/>    <elementRef key="link"/>    <elementRef key="ptr"/>   </alternate>   <classRef key="model.personLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element org {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.editLike),  [tei\_att.sortable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.sortable),  attribute role { list { + } }?,  (  [tei\_model.headLike](#TEI.tei_model.headLike)\*,  (  [tei\_model.pLike](#TEI.tei_model.pLike)\*  | (  [tei\_model.labelLike](#TEI.tei_model.labelLike) | [tei\_model.nameLike](#TEI.tei_model.nameLike) | [tei\_model.placeLike](#TEI.tei_model.placeLike) | [tei\_model.orgPart](#TEI.tei_model.orgPart) | [tei\_model.milestoneLike](#TEI.tei_model.milestoneLike) )\*  ),  (  [tei\_model.noteLike](#TEI.tei_model.noteLike) | [tei\_model.biblLike](#TEI.tei_model.biblLike) | [tei\_linkGrp](#TEI.tei_linkGrp) | [tei\_link](#TEI.tei_link) | [ptr](#TEI.ptr) )\*,  [tei\_model.personLike](#TEI.tei_model.personLike)\*  ) } |

## <orgName>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<orgName>** (organization name) contains an organizational name. [[13.2.2. Organizational Names](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDORG)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.personal (@full, @sort) (att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) ) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.nameLike.agent |
| **Contained by** | **core:** p q said title  **linking:** ab seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset org orgName persName persPronouns placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname |
| **May contain** | **core:** q said title  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName persPronouns placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  character data |
| **Example** | About a year back, a question of considerable interest was agitated in the <**orgName** **key**="PAS1" **type**="voluntary">  <**placeName** **key**="PEN">Pennsyla.</**placeName**> Abolition Society </**orgName**> [...] |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element orgName {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.datable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.datable),  [tei\_att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.editLike),  [tei\_att.personal.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.personal),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <p>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<p>** (paragraph) marks paragraphs in prose. [[3.1. Paragraphs](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COPA) [7.2.5. Speech Contents](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DR.html#DRPAL)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declaring (@decls) att.fragmentable (@part) att.written (@hand) |
| **Member of** | model.pLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** q said  **header:** publicationStmt sourceDesc  **namesdates:** climate event langKnowledge listRelation nym object occupation org person personGrp persona place population state terrain trait  **textstructure:** body |
| **May contain** | **core:** q said title  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName persPronouns placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  character data |
| **Example** | <**p**>Hallgerd was outside. <**q**>There is blood on your axe,</**q**> she said. <**q**>What have you    done?</**q**> </**p**> <**p**>  <**q**>I have now arranged that you can be married a second time,</**q**> replied Thjostolf. </**p**> <**p**>  <**q**>Then you must mean that Thorvald is dead,</**q**> she said. </**p**> <**p**>  <**q**>Yes,</**q**> said Thjostolf. <**q**>And now you must think up some plan for me.</**q**> </**p**> |
| **Schematron** | <s:report test="not(ancestor::tei:floatingText) and (ancestor::tei:p or ancestor::tei:ab) and not(parent::tei:exemplum |parent::tei:item |parent::tei:note |parent::tei:q |parent::tei:quote |parent::tei:remarks |parent::tei:said |parent::tei:sp |parent::tei:stage |parent::tei:cell |parent::tei:figure )"> Abstract model violation: Paragraphs may not occur inside other paragraphs or ab elements. </s:report> |
| **Schematron** | <s:report test="ancestor::tei:l[not(.//tei:note//tei:p[. = current()])]"> Abstract model violation: Lines may not contain higher-level structural elements such as div, p, or ab. </s:report> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element p {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.declaring.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.declaring),  [tei\_att.fragmentable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.fragmentable),  [tei\_att.written.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.written),  [tei\_macro.paraContent](#TEI.tei_macro.paraContent)} |

## <persName>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<persName>** (personal name) contains a proper noun or proper-noun phrase referring to a person, possibly including one or more of the person's forenames, surnames, honorifics, added names, etc. [[13.2.1. Personal Names](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPER)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.personal (@full, @sort) (att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) ) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.nameLike.agent model.persStateLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** p q said title  **linking:** ab seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset org orgName persName persPronouns person personGrp persona placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname |
| **May contain** | **core:** q said title  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName persPronouns placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  character data |
| **Example** | <**persName**>  <**forename**>Edward</**forename**>  <**forename**>George</**forename**>  <**surname** **type**="linked">Bulwer-Lytton</**surname**>, <**roleName**>Baron Lytton of  <**placeName**>Knebworth</**placeName**>  </**roleName**> </**persName**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element persName {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.datable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.datable),  [tei\_att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.editLike),  [tei\_att.personal.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.personal),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <persPronouns>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<persPronouns>** (personal pronouns) indicates the personal pronouns used, or assumed to be used, by the individual being described. [[13.3.2.1. Personal Characteristics](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPERSEpc)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **evidence** | (evidence) indicates support for the listed personal pronouns.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Recommended | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Suggested values include:** | **conjecture** (conjecture) The given value was selected based on assumptions by someone besides the person to whom this pronoun applies. As a result, the value may be erroneous.  **selfIdentification** (self identification) The given value has been explicitly stated or confirmed by the person to whom this pronoun applies.  **trustedThirdParty** (trusted third party) The given value has been supplied by another individual trusted by the encoder to know the preferences of the person to whom this pronoun applies. | | | **value** | (value) supplies a regularized value for personal pronouns.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Recommended | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace | | **Sample values include:** | **e** (e) e/eirs  **he** (he) he/him/his  **she** (she) she/her/hers  **they** (they) they/them/theirs | | **Note** | The sample values list shown here is intended to be reflective of English usage. There is nothing restricting users from defining lists reflective of other languages, e.g. elle, il, and ils. | | |
| **Member of** | model.persNamePart model.persStateLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** p q said title  **linking:** ab seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset org orgName persName persPronouns person personGrp persona placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname |
| **May contain** | **core:** q said title  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName persPronouns placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  character data |
| **Example** | <**person**>  <**persName**>   <**forename**>SUE</**forename**>   <**addName**>the T. rex</**addName**>  </**persName**>  <**residence**>The Field Museum. Chicago, Illinois, United States.</**residence**>  <**sex** **value**="0"/>  <**persPronouns** **value**="they">they/them</**persPronouns**>  <**note**>   <**cit**>    <**quote**>Specimen FMNH PR 2081. Legendary Fossil. Apex        Predator. National Treasure. <**emph** **style**="text-transform:uppercase; letter-spacing:0.25rem;">Murderbird.</**emph**>    </**quote**>    <**bibl**>SUEtheTrex, Twitter biography.    <**ptr** **target**="https://twitter.com/SUEtheTrex"/>.        Accessed <**date** **when**="2020-03-25">March 25th, 2020</**date**>.</**bibl**>   </**cit**>  </**note**> </**person**> |
| **Example** | <**docAuthor**>  <**persName**>Lal Zimman</**persName**>  <**persPronouns** **value**="he">(he/him/his)</**persPronouns**>  <**ref** **target**="#Name">(FAQ)</**ref**>  <**persName** **type**="IPA">[lɑɫ ˈzimn̩]</**persName**>  <**email**>zimman at ucsb dot edu</**email**>  <**roleName**>Assistant Professor of Linguistics</**roleName**>  <**roleName**>Affiliated Faculty in Feminist Studies</**roleName**>  <**address**>   <**addrLine**>South Hall 3518</**addrLine**>   <**addrLine**>University of California, Santa Barbara</**addrLine**>  </**address**> </**docAuthor**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element persPronouns {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.datable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.datable),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  attribute evidence  {  "conjecture" | "selfIdentification" | "trustedThirdParty"  }?,  attribute value { list { + } }?,  [tei\_macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <person>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<person>** (person) provides information about an identifiable individual, for example a participant in a language interaction, or a person referred to in a historical source. [[13.3.2. The Person Element](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPERSE) [15.2.2. The Participant Description](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHPA)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.sortable (@sortKey)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **role** | specifies a primary role or classification for the person.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace | | **Note** | Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, using arbitrary keywords such as artist, employer, author, relative, or servant, each of which should be associated with a definition. Such local definitions will typically be provided by a <valList> element in the project schema specification. | | | **sex** | specifies the sex of the person.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.sex separated by whitespace | | **Note** | Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, or may refer to an external standard, such as vCard's sex property <http://microformats.org/wiki/gender-formats> (in which M indicates male, F female, O other, N none or not applicable, U unknown), or the often used ISO 5218:2004 *Representation of Human Sexes*<http://standards.iso.org/ittf/PubliclyAvailableStandards/c036266_ISO_IEC_5218_2004(E_F).zip> (in which 0 indicates unknown; 1 male; 2 female; and 9 not applicable, although the ISO standard is widely considered inadequate); cf. CETH's *Recommendations for Inclusive Data Collection of Trans People*<http://transhealth.ucsf.edu/trans?page=lib-data-collection>. | | | **age** | specifies an age group for the person.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Note** | Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, using arbitrary keywords such as infant, child, teen, adult, or senior, each of which should be associated with a definition. Such local definitions will typically be provided by a <valList> element in the project schema specification. | | |
| **Member of** | model.personLike |
| **Contained by** | **namesdates:** listPerson org |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **linking:** ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline  **namesdates:** affiliation age birth death education event faith floruit langKnowledge listEvent nationality occupation persName persPronouns persona residence sex socecStatus state trait |
| **Note** | May contain either a prose description organized as paragraphs, or a sequence of more specific demographic elements drawn from the model.personPart class. |
| **Example** | <**person** **age**="adult" **sex**="F">  <**p**>Female respondent, well-educated, born in Shropshire UK, 12 Jan 1950, of unknown occupation. Speaks French fluently. Socio-Economic    status B2.</**p**> </**person**> |
| **Example** | <**person** **age**="immortal" **role**="god"  **sex**="intersex">  <**persName**>Hermaphroditos</**persName**>  <**persName** **xml:lang**="grc">Ἑρμαφρόδιτος</**persName**> </**person**> |
| **Example** | <**person** **role**="poet" **sex**="1" **xml:id**="Ovi01">  <**persName** **xml:lang**="en">Ovid</**persName**>  <**persName** **xml:lang**="la">Publius Ovidius Naso</**persName**>  <**birth** **when**="-0044-03-20"> 20 March 43 BC <**placeName**>    <**settlement** **type**="city">Sulmona</**settlement**>    <**country** **key**="IT">Italy</**country**>   </**placeName**>  </**birth**>  <**death** **notAfter**="0018" **notBefore**="0017">17 or 18 AD <**placeName**>    <**settlement** **type**="city">Tomis (Constanta)</**settlement**>    <**country** **key**="RO">Romania</**country**>   </**placeName**>  </**death**> </**person**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <classRef key="model.pLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.personPart"/>    <classRef key="model.global"/>    <elementRef key="ptr"/>   </alternate>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element person {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.editLike),  [tei\_att.sortable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.sortable),  attribute role { list { + } }?,  attribute sex { list { + } }?,  attribute age { text }?,  ( [tei\_model.pLike](#TEI.tei_model.pLike)+ | ( [tei\_model.personPart](#TEI.tei_model.personPart) | [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global) | [ptr](#TEI.ptr) )\* ) } |

## <personGrp>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<personGrp>** (personal group) describes a group of individuals treated as a single person for analytic purposes. [[15.2.2. The Participant Description](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHPA)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.sortable (@sortKey)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **role** | specifies the role of this group of participants in the interaction.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Note** | Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, using arbitrary keywords such as movement, employers, relatives, or servants, each of which should be associated with a definition. Such local definitions will typically be provided by a <valList> element in the project schema specification. | | | **sex** | specifies the sex of the participant group.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.sex separated by whitespace | | **Note** | Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, or may refer to an external standard, such as vCard's sex property <http://microformats.org/wiki/gender-formats> (in which M indicates male, F female, O other, N none or not applicable, U unknown), or the often used ISO 5218:2004 *Representation of Human Sexes*<http://standards.iso.org/ittf/PubliclyAvailableStandards/c036266_ISO_IEC_5218_2004(E_F).zip> (in which 0 indicates unknown; 1 male; 2 female; and 9 not applicable, although the ISO standard is widely considered inadequate); cf. CETH's *Recommendations for Inclusive Data Collection of Trans People*<http://transhealth.ucsf.edu/trans?page=lib-data-collection>. For a mixed group, a value such as "mixed" may also be supplied. | | | **age** | specifies the age group of the participants.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Note** | Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, using arbitrary keywords such as infant, child, teen, adult, or senior, each of which should be associated with a definition. Such local definitions will typically be provided by a <valList> element in the project schema specification. | | | **size** | describes informally the size or approximate size of the group for example by means of a number and an indication of accuracy e.g. approx 200.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace | | |
| **Member of** | model.personLike |
| **Contained by** | **namesdates:** listPerson org |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **linking:** ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline  **namesdates:** affiliation age birth death education event faith floruit langKnowledge listEvent nationality occupation persName persPronouns persona residence sex socecStatus state trait |
| **Note** | May contain a prose description organized as paragraphs, or any sequence of demographic elements in any combination.  The global *@xml:id* attribute should be used to identify each speaking participant in a spoken text if the *@who* attribute is specified on individual utterances. |
| **Example** | <**personGrp** **role**="audience" **sex**="mixed"  **size**="approx 50" **xml:id**="pg1"/> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <classRef key="model.pLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.personPart"/>    <classRef key="model.global"/>   </alternate>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element personGrp {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.sortable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.sortable),  attribute role { text }?,  attribute sex { list { + } }?,  attribute age { text }?,  attribute size { list { + } }?,  ( [tei\_model.pLike](#TEI.tei_model.pLike)+ | ( [tei\_model.personPart](#TEI.tei_model.personPart) | [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global) )\* ) } |

## <persona>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<persona>** provides information about one of the personalities identified for a given individual, where an individual has multiple personalities. [[13.3.2. The Person Element](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPERSE)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.sortable (@sortKey)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **role** | specifies a primary role or classification for the persona.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace | | **Note** | Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, using arbitrary keywords such as artist, employer, author, relative, or servant, each of which should be associated with a definition. Such local definitions will typically be provided by a <valList> element in the project schema specification. | | | **sex** | specifies the sex of the persona.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.sex separated by whitespace | | **Note** | Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, or may refer to an external standard, such as vCard's sex property <http://microformats.org/wiki/gender-formats> (in which M indicates male, F female, O other, N none or not applicable, U unknown), or the often used ISO 5218:2004 *Representation of Human Sexes*<http://standards.iso.org/ittf/PubliclyAvailableStandards/c036266_ISO_IEC_5218_2004(E_F).zip> (in which 0 indicates unknown; 1 male; 2 female; and 9 not applicable, although the ISO standard is widely considered inadequate); cf. CETH's *Recommendations for Inclusive Data Collection of Trans People*<http://transhealth.ucsf.edu/trans?page=lib-data-collection>. | | | **age** | specifies an age group for the persona.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Note** | Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, using arbitrary keywords such as infant, child, teen, adult, or senior, each of which should be associated with a definition. Such local definitions will typically be provided by a <valList> element in the project schema specification. | | |
| **Member of** | model.persStateLike |
| **Contained by** | **namesdates:** person personGrp persona |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **linking:** ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline  **namesdates:** affiliation age birth death education event faith floruit langKnowledge listEvent nationality occupation persName persPronouns persona residence sex socecStatus state trait |
| **Note** | Note that a persona is not the same as a role. A role may be assumed by different people on different occasions, whereas a persona is unique to a particular person, even though it may resemble others. Similarly, when an actor takes on or enacts the role of a historical person, they do not thereby acquire a new persona. |
| **Example** | <**person** **age**="adult" **sex**="M">  <**persona** **sex**="M">   <**persName**>Dr Henry Jekyll</**persName**>  </**persona**>  <**persona** **age**="youth" **sex**="M">   <**persName**>Edward Hyde</**persName**>  </**persona**> </**person**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <classRef key="model.pLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.personPart"/>    <classRef key="model.global"/>   </alternate>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element persona {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.editLike),  [tei\_att.sortable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.sortable),  attribute role { list { + } }?,  attribute sex { list { + } }?,  attribute age { text }?,  ( [tei\_model.pLike](#TEI.tei_model.pLike)+ | ( [tei\_model.personPart](#TEI.tei_model.personPart) | [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global) )\* ) } |

## <place>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<place>** (place) contains data about a geographic location [[13.3.4. Places](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDGEOG)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.sortable (@sortKey) |
| **Member of** | model.placeLike |
| **Contained by** | **namesdates:** listPlace org place |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **linking:** ab link linkGrp  **namesdates:** bloc climate country district event geogName listEvent listPlace location place placeName population region settlement state terrain trait |
| **Example** | <**place**>  <**country**>Lithuania</**country**>  <**country** **xml:lang**="lt">Lietuva</**country**>  <**place**>   <**settlement**>Vilnius</**settlement**>  </**place**>  <**place**>   <**settlement**>Kaunas</**settlement**>  </**place**> </**place**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <classRef key="model.headLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <alternate>    <classRef key="model.pLike"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="0">     <classRef key="model.labelLike"/>     <classRef key="model.placeStateLike"/>     <classRef key="model.eventLike"/>     <elementRef key="name"/>    </alternate>   </alternate>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>    <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>    <elementRef key="idno"/>    <elementRef key="ptr"/>    <elementRef key="linkGrp"/>    <elementRef key="link"/>   </alternate>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.placeLike"/>    <elementRef key="listPlace"/>   </alternate>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element place {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.editLike),  [tei\_att.sortable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.sortable),  (  [tei\_model.headLike](#TEI.tei_model.headLike)\*,  (  [tei\_model.pLike](#TEI.tei_model.pLike)\*  | (  [tei\_model.labelLike](#TEI.tei_model.labelLike) | [tei\_model.placeStateLike](#TEI.tei_model.placeStateLike) | [tei\_model.eventLike](#TEI.tei_model.eventLike) | [name](#TEI.name) )\*  ),  (  [tei\_model.noteLike](#TEI.tei_model.noteLike) | [tei\_model.biblLike](#TEI.tei_model.biblLike) | [idno](#TEI.idno) | [ptr](#TEI.ptr) | [tei\_linkGrp](#TEI.tei_linkGrp) | [tei\_link](#TEI.tei_link) )\*,  ( [tei\_model.placeLike](#TEI.tei_model.placeLike) | [tei\_listPlace](#TEI.tei_listPlace) )\*  ) } |

## <placeName>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<placeName>** (place name) contains an absolute or relative place name. [[13.2.3. Place Names](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPLAC)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.personal (@full, @sort) (att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) ) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.placeNamePart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** p q said title  **linking:** ab seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown location nameLink nationality objectIdentifier objectName occupation offset org orgName persName persPronouns place placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname |
| **May contain** | **core:** q said title  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName persPronouns placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  character data |
| **Example** | <**placeName**>  <**settlement**>Rochester</**settlement**>  <**region**>New York</**region**> </**placeName**> |
| **Example** | <**placeName**>  <**geogName**>Arrochar Alps</**geogName**>  <**region**>Argylshire</**region**> </**placeName**> |
| **Example** | <**placeName**>  <**measure**>10 miles</**measure**>  <**offset**>Northeast of</**offset**>  <**settlement**>Attica</**settlement**> </**placeName**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element placeName {  [tei\_att.datable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.datable),  [tei\_att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.editLike),  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.personal.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.personal),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <population>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<population>** (population) contains information about the population of a place. [[13.3.4.3. States, Traits, and Events](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDGEOGste)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) |
| **Member of** | model.placeStateLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** p q said title  **linking:** ab seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset org orgName persName persPronouns place placeName population region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **linking:** ab  **namesdates:** population |
| **Example** | <**population** **resp**="#UKCensus" **when**="2001-04">  <**population** **type**="white">   <**desc**>54153898</**desc**>  </**population**>  <**population** **type**="asian">   <**desc**>11811423</**desc**>  </**population**>  <**population** **type**="black">   <**desc**>1148738</**desc**>  </**population**>  <**population** **type**="mixed">   <**desc**>677117</**desc**>  </**population**>  <**population** **type**="chinese">   <**desc**>247403</**desc**>  </**population**>  <**population** **type**="other">   <**desc**>230615</**desc**>  </**population**> </**population**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <elementRef key="precision"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <classRef key="model.headLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <sequence minOccurs="0">    <alternate>     <classRef key="model.pLike"      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>     <classRef key="model.labelLike"      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>    </alternate>    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="0">     <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>     <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>    </alternate>   </sequence>   <elementRef key="population"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element population {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.datable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.datable),  [tei\_att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.editLike),  [tei\_att.naming.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.naming),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_att.dimensions.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.dimensions),  (  [precision](#TEI.precision)\*,  [tei\_model.headLike](#TEI.tei_model.headLike)\*,  (  ( [tei\_model.pLike](#TEI.tei_model.pLike)+ | [tei\_model.labelLike](#TEI.tei_model.labelLike)+ ),  ( [tei\_model.noteLike](#TEI.tei_model.noteLike) | [tei\_model.biblLike](#TEI.tei_model.biblLike) )\*  )?,  [tei\_population](#TEI.tei_population)\*  ) } |

## <publicationStmt>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<publicationStmt>** (publication statement) groups information concerning the publication or distribution of an electronic or other text. [[2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD24) [2.2. The File Description](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD2)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Contained by** | **header:** fileDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **linking:** ab |
| **Note** | Where a publication statement contains several members of the model.publicationStmtPart.agency or model.publicationStmtPart.detail classes rather than one or more paragraphs or anonymous blocks, care should be taken to ensure that the repeated elements are presented in a meaningful order. It is a conformance requirement that elements supplying information about publication place, address, identifier, availability, and date be given following the name of the publisher, distributor, or authority concerned, and preferably in that order. |
| **Example** | <**publicationStmt**>  <**publisher**>C. Muquardt </**publisher**>  <**pubPlace**>Bruxelles &amp; Leipzig</**pubPlace**>  <**date** **when**="1846"/> </**publicationStmt**> |
| **Example** | <**publicationStmt**>  <**publisher**>Chadwyck Healey</**publisher**>  <**pubPlace**>Cambridge</**pubPlace**>  <**availability**>   <**p**>Available under licence only</**p**>  </**availability**>  <**date** **when**="1992">1992</**date**> </**publicationStmt**> |
| **Example** | <**publicationStmt**>  <**publisher**>Zea Books</**publisher**>  <**pubPlace**>Lincoln, NE</**pubPlace**>  <**date**>2017</**date**>  <**availability**>   <**p**>This is an open access work licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution 4.0 International license.</**p**>  </**availability**>  <**ptr** **target**="http://digitalcommons.unl.edu/zeabook/55"/> </**publicationStmt**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <sequence maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="1">    <classRef key="model.publicationStmtPart.agency"/>    <classRef key="model.publicationStmtPart.detail"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   </sequence>   <classRef key="model.pLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element publicationStmt {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  (  (  [tei\_model.publicationStmtPart.agency](#TEI.tei_model.publicationStmtPart.agency),  [tei\_model.publicationStmtPart.detail](#TEI.tei_model.publicationStmtPart.detail)\*  )+  | [tei\_model.pLike](#TEI.tei_model.pLike)+  ) } |

## <q>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<q>** (quoted) contains material which is distinguished from the surrounding text using quotation marks or a similar method, for any one of a variety of reasons including, but not limited to: direct speech or thought, technical terms or jargon, authorial distance, quotations from elsewhere, and passages that are mentioned but not used. [[3.3.3. Quotation](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQQ)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.ascribed.directed (@toWhom) (att.ascribed (@who))   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | (type) may be used to indicate whether the offset passage is spoken or thought, or to characterize it more finely.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Suggested values include:** | **spoken** (spoken) representation of speech  **thought** (thought) representation of thought, e.g. internal monologue  **written** (written) quotation from a written source  **soCalled** (so called) authorial distance  **foreign** (foreign)  **distinct** (distinct) linguistically distinct  **term** technical term  **emph** (emph) rhetorically emphasized  **mentioned** (mentioned) refering to itself, not its normal referent | | |
| **Member of** | model.common model.hiLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** p q said title  **linking:** ab seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset orgName persName persPronouns placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **textstructure:** body |
| **May contain** | **core:** p q said title  **linking:** ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName persPronouns placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  character data |
| **Note** | May be used to indicate that a passage is distinguished from the surrounding text for reasons concerning which no claim is made. When used in this manner, <q> may be thought of as syntactic sugar for <hi> with a value of *@rend* that indicates the use of such mechanisms as quotation marks. |
| **Example** | It is spelled <**q**>Tübingen</**q**> — to enter the  letter <**q**>u</**q**> with an umlaut hold down the <**q**>option</**q**> key and press  <**q**>0 0 f c</**q**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element q {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.ascribed.directed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.ascribed.directed),  attribute type  {  "spoken"  | "thought"  | "written"  | "soCalled"  | "foreign"  | "distinct"  | "term"  | "emph"  | "mentioned"  }?,  [tei\_macro.specialPara](#TEI.tei_macro.specialPara)} |

## <region>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<region>** (region) contains the name of an administrative unit such as a state, province, or county, larger than a settlement, but smaller than a country. [[13.2.3. Place Names](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPLAC)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) |
| **Member of** | model.placeNamePart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** p q said title  **linking:** ab seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown location nameLink nationality objectIdentifier objectName occupation offset org orgName persName persPronouns place placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname |
| **May contain** | **core:** q said title  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName persPronouns placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  character data |
| **Example** | <**placeName**>  <**region** **n**="IL" **type**="state">Illinois</**region**> </**placeName**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element region {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.naming.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.naming),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_att.datable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.datable),  [tei\_macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <relation>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<relation>** (relationship) describes any kind of relationship or linkage amongst a specified group of places, events, persons, objects or other items. [[13.3.2.3. Personal Relationships](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPERSREL)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.canonical (@key, @ref) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.typed (@type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **name** | supplies a name for the kind of relationship of which this is an instance.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | | **active** | identifies the ‘active’ participants in a non-mutual relationship, or all the participants in a mutual one.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace | | | **mutual** | supplies a list of participants amongst all of whom the relationship holds equally.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace | | | **passive** | identifies the ‘passive’ participants in a non-mutual relationship.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace | | |
| **Contained by** | **namesdates:** listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation |
| **May contain** | Empty element |
| **Note** | Only one of the attributes *@active* and *@mutual* may be supplied; the attribute *@passive* may be supplied only if the attribute *@active* is supplied. Not all of these constraints can be enforced in all schema languages. |
| **Example** | <**relation** **active**="#p1" **name**="supervisor"  **passive**="#p2 #p3 #p4" **type**="social"/>  This indicates that the person with identifier p1 is supervisor of persons p2, p3, and p4. |
| **Example** | <**relation** **mutual**="#p2 #p3 #p4"  **name**="friends" **type**="personal"/>  This indicates that p2, p3, and p4 are all friends. |
| **Example** | <**relation** **active**="http://id.clarosnet.org/places/metamorphoses/place/italy-orvieto"  **name**="P89\_falls\_within"  **passive**="http://id.clarosnet.org/places/metamorphoses/country/IT" **type**="CRM"/>  This indicates that there is a relation, defined by CIDOC CRM, between two resources identified by URLs. |
| **Example** | <**relation** **active**="http://www.ancientwisdoms.ac.uk/cts/urn:cts:greekLit:tlg3017.Syno298.sawsGrc01:divedition.divsection1.o14.a107"  **passive**="http://data.perseus.org/citations/urn:cts:greekLit:tlg0031.tlg002.perseus-grc1:9.35"  **ref**="http://purl.org/saws/ontology#isVariantOf" **resp**="http://viaf.org/viaf/44335536/"/>  This example records a relationship, defined by the SAWS ontology, between a passage of text identified by a CTS URN, and a variant passage of text in the Perseus Digital Library, and assigns the identification of the relationship to a particular editor (all using resolvable URIs). |
| **Schematron** | <s:assert test="@ref or @key or @name">One of the attributes 'name', 'ref' or 'key' must be supplied</s:assert> |
| **Schematron** | <s:report test="@active and @mutual">Only one of the attributes @active and @mutual may be supplied</s:report> |
| **Schematron** | <s:report test="@passive and not(@active)">the attribute 'passive' may be supplied only if the attribute 'active' is supplied</s:report> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element relation {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.datable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.datable),  [tei\_att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.editLike),  [tei\_att.canonical.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.canonical),  [tei\_att.sortable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.sortable),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  attribute name { text }?,  ( attribute active { list { + } }? | attribute mutual { list { + } }? ),  attribute passive { list { + } }?,  [desc](#TEI.desc)? } |

## <residence>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<residence>** (residence) describes a person's present or past places of residence. [[15.2.2. The Participant Description](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHPA)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | att.typed | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Sample values include:** | **primary**  **secondary**  **temporary**  **permanent** | | |
| **Member of** | model.persStateLike |
| **Contained by** | **namesdates:** person personGrp persona |
| **May contain** | **core:** q said title  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName persPronouns placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  character data |
| **Example** | <**residence**>Childhood in East Africa and long term resident of Glasgow, Scotland.</**residence**> |
| **Example** | <**residence** **notAfter**="1997">Mbeni estate, Dzukumura region, Matabele land</**residence**> <**residence** **notAfter**="1996" **notBefore**="1903">  <**placeName**>   <**settlement**>Glasgow</**settlement**>   <**region**>Scotland</**region**>  </**placeName**> </**residence**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element residence {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.datable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.datable),  [tei\_att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.editLike),  [tei\_att.naming.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.naming),  [tei\_att.typed.attribute.subtype](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  attribute type { text }?,  [tei\_macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <roleName>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<roleName>** (role name) contains a name component which indicates that the referent has a particular role or position in society, such as an official title or rank. [[13.2.1. Personal Names](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPER)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.personal (@full, @sort) (att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) ) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.persNamePart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** p q said title  **linking:** ab seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset org orgName persName persPronouns placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname |
| **May contain** | **core:** q said title  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName persPronouns placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  character data |
| **Note** | A <roleName> may be distinguished from an <addName> by virtue of the fact that, like a title, it typically exists independently of its holder. |
| **Example** | <**persName**>  <**forename**>William</**forename**>  <**surname**>Poulteny</**surname**>  <**roleName**>Earl of Bath</**roleName**> </**persName**> |
| **Example** | <**p**>The <**roleName** **role**="#solicitor\_general">S.G.</**roleName**> is the only national public official,  including the Supreme Court justices, required by statute to be “learned in the law.”</**p**> |
| **Example** | <**p**>  <**persName** **ref**="#NJF">   <**roleName** **role**="#solicitor\_general">Solicitor General</**roleName**> Noel J. Francisco</**persName**>,  representing the administration, asserted in rebuttal that there was nothing to disavow (...) <**persName** **ref**="#NJF">Francisco</**persName**> had violated the scrupulous standard of candor about the facts and  the law that <**roleName** **role**="#solicitor\_general">S.G.s</**roleName**>, in Republican and Democratic administrations  alike, have repeatedly said they must honor. </**p**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element roleName {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.personal.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.personal),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <said>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<said>** (speech or thought) indicates passages thought or spoken aloud, whether explicitly indicated in the source or not, whether directly or indirectly reported, whether by real people or fictional characters. [[3.3.3. Quotation](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQQ)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.ascribed.directed (@toWhom) (att.ascribed (@who))   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **aloud** | may be used to indicate whether the quoted matter is regarded as having been vocalized or signed.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.xTruthValue | | <**p**> Celia thought privately, <**said** **aloud**="false">Dorothea quite despises Sir James Chettam;    I believe she would not accept him.</**said**> Celia felt that this was a pity.  <!-- ... --> </**p**> | | | **Note** | The value true indicates the encoded passage was expressed outwardly (whether spoken, signed, sung, screamed, chanted, etc.); the value false indicates that the encoded passage was thought, but not outwardly expressed. | | | **direct** | may be used to indicate whether the quoted matter is regarded as direct or indirect speech.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.xTruthValue | | **Default** | true | | <!-- in the header --><**editorialDecl**>  <**quotation** **marks**="none"/> </**editorialDecl**> <!-- ... --> <**p**>Tantripp had brought a card, and said that <**said** **direct**="false">there was a gentleman waiting in the lobby</**said**>.  The courier had told him that <**said** **direct**="false">only Mrs. Casaubon was at home</**said**>,  but he said <**said** **direct**="false">he was a relation of Mr. Casaubon's: would she see him?</**said**> </**p**> | | | **Note** | The value true indicates the speech or thought is represented directly; the value false that speech or thought is represented indirectly, e.g. by use of a marked verbal aspect. | | |
| **Member of** | model.attributable |
| **Contained by** | **core:** p q said title  **linking:** ab seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset orgName persName persPronouns placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **textstructure:** body |
| **May contain** | **core:** p q said title  **linking:** ab alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName persPronouns placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  character data |
| **Example** | <!-- in the header --><**editorialDecl**>  <**quotation** **marks**="all"/> </**editorialDecl**> <!-- ... --> <**p**>  <**said**>"Our minstrel here will warm the old man's heart with song, dazzle him with jewels and    gold"</**said**>, a troublemaker simpered. <**said**>"He'll trample on the Duke's camellias, spill    his wine, and blunt his sword, and say his name begins with X, and in the end the Duke    will say, <**said**>'Take Saralinda, with my blessing, O lordly Prince of Rags and Tags, O      rider of the sun!'</**said**>"</**said**> </**p**> |
| **Example** | <**p**>  <**said** **aloud**="true" **rend**="pre(“) post(”)">Hmmm</**said**>, said a small voice in his ear. <**said** **aloud**="true" **rend**="pre(“) post(”)">Difficult. Very difficult. Plenty of courage, I see.    Not a bad mind either. there's talent, oh my goodness, yes — and a nice thirst to prove    yourself, now that's interesting. … So where shall I put you?</**said**> </**p**> <**p**>Harry gripped the edges of the stool and thought, <**said** **aloud**="false" **rend**="italic">Not    Slytherin, not Slytherin</**said**>.</**p**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element said {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.ascribed.directed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.ascribed.directed),  attribute aloud { text }?,  attribute direct { text }?,  [tei\_macro.specialPara](#TEI.tei_macro.specialPara)} |

## <seg>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<seg>** (arbitrary segment) represents any segmentation of text below the ‘chunk’ level. [[16.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SASE) [6.2. Components of the Verse Line](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/VE.html#VESE) [7.2.5. Speech Contents](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DR.html#DRPAL)] | |
| **Module** | linking |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.segLike (@function) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.written (@hand) att.notated (@notation) |
| **Member of** | model.segLike model.standOffPart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** p q said title  **linking:** ab seg standOff  **namesdates:** addName affiliation birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset orgName persName persPronouns placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname |
| **May contain** | **core:** q said title  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName persPronouns placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  character data |
| **Note** | The <seg> element may be used at the encoder's discretion to mark any segments of the text of interest for processing. One use of the element is to mark text features for which no appropriate markup is otherwise defined. Another use is to provide an identifier for some segment which is to be pointed at by some other element—i.e. to provide a target, or a part of a target, for a <ptr> or other similar element. |
| **Example** | <**seg**>When are you leaving?</**seg**> <**seg**>Tomorrow.</**seg**> |
| **Example** | <**s**>  <**seg** **rend**="caps" **type**="initial-cap">So father's only</**seg**> glory was the ballfield.  </**s**> |
| **Example** | <**seg** **type**="preamble">  <**seg**>Sigmund, <**seg** **type**="patronym">the son of Volsung</**seg**>, was a king in Frankish country.</**seg**>  <**seg**>Sinfiotli was the eldest of his sons ...</**seg**>  <**seg**>Borghild, Sigmund's wife, had a brother ... </**seg**> </**seg**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element seg {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.segLike.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.segLike),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_att.written.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.written),  [tei\_att.notated.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.notated),  [tei\_macro.paraContent](#TEI.tei_macro.paraContent)} |

## <settlement>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<settlement>** (settlement) contains the name of a settlement such as a city, town, or village identified as a single geo-political or administrative unit. [[13.2.3. Place Names](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPLAC)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) |
| **Member of** | model.placeNamePart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** p q said title  **linking:** ab seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown location nameLink nationality objectIdentifier objectName occupation offset org orgName persName persPronouns place placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname |
| **May contain** | **core:** q said title  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName persPronouns placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  character data |
| **Example** | <**placeName**>  <**settlement** **type**="town">Glasgow</**settlement**>  <**region**>Scotland</**region**> </**placeName**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element settlement {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.naming.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.naming),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_att.datable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.datable),  [tei\_macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <sex>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<sex>** (sex) specifies the sex of a person. [[13.3.2.1. Personal Characteristics](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPERSEpc)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.typed (type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | att.typed | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Sample values include:** | **explicit**  **implicit** | | | **value** | supplies a coded value for sex   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.sex separated by whitespace | | **Note** | Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, or may refer to an external standard, such as vCard's sex property <http://microformats.org/wiki/gender-formats> (in which M indicates male, F female, O other, N none or not applicable, U unknown), or the often used ISO 5218:2004 *Representation of Human Sexes*<http://standards.iso.org/ittf/PubliclyAvailableStandards/c036266_ISO_IEC_5218_2004(E_F).zip> (in which 0 indicates unknown; 1 male; 2 female; and 9 not applicable, although the ISO standard is widely considered inadequate); cf. CETH's *Recommendations for Inclusive Data Collection of Trans People*<http://transhealth.ucsf.edu/trans?page=lib-data-collection>. | | |
| **Member of** | model.persStateLike |
| **Contained by** | **namesdates:** person personGrp persona |
| **May contain** | **core:** q said title  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName persPronouns placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  character data |
| **Note** | As with other culturally-constructed traits such as age, the way in which this concept is described in different cultural contexts may vary. The normalizing attributes are provided only as an optional means of simplifying that variety to one or more external standards for purposes of interoperability, or project-internal taxonomies for consistency, and should not be used where that is inappropriate or unhelpful. The content of the element may be used to describe the intended concept in more detail, using plain text. |
| **Example** | <**sex** **value**="M">male</**sex**> |
| **Example** | <**sex** **value**="2">female</**sex**> |
| **Example** | <**sex** **value**="I">Intersex</**sex**> |
| **Example** | <**sex** **value**="TG F">Female (TransWoman)</**sex**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element sex {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.editLike),  [tei\_att.datable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.datable),  [tei\_att.typed.attribute.subtype](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  attribute type { text }?,  attribute value { list { + } }?,  [tei\_macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <socecStatus>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<socecStatus>** (socio-economic status) contains an informal description of a person's perceived social or economic status. [[15.2.2. The Participant Description](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHPA)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | att.typed | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Sample values include:** | **atBirth**  **atDeath**  **dependent**  **inherited**  **independent** | | | **scheme** | identifies the classification system or taxonomy in use, for example by pointing to a locally-defined <taxonomy> element or by supplying a URI for an externally-defined system.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.pointer | | | **code** | identifies a status code defined within the classification system or taxonomy defined by the *@scheme* attribute.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.pointer | | |
| **Member of** | model.persStateLike |
| **Contained by** | **namesdates:** person personGrp persona |
| **May contain** | **core:** q said title  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName persPronouns placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  character data |
| **Note** | The content of this element may be used as an alternative to the more formal specification made possible by its attributes; it may also be used to supplement the formal specification with commentary or clarification. |
| **Example** | <**socecStatus** **code**="#ab1" **scheme**="#rg"/> |
| **Example** | <**socecStatus**>Status AB1 in the RG Classification scheme</**socecStatus**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element socecStatus {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.datable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.datable),  [tei\_att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.editLike),  [tei\_att.naming.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.naming),  [tei\_att.typed.attribute.subtype](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  attribute type { text }?,  attribute scheme { text }?,  attribute code { text }?,  [tei\_macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <sourceDesc>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<sourceDesc>** (source description) describes the source(s) from which an electronic text was derived or generated, typically a bibliographic description in the case of a digitized text, or a phrase such as "born digital" for a text which has no previous existence. [[2.2.7. The Source Description](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD3)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declarable (@default) |
| **Contained by** | **header:** fileDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **linking:** ab  **namesdates:** listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation |
| **Example** | <**sourceDesc**>  <**bibl**>   <**title** **level**="a">The Interesting story of the Children in the Wood</**title**>. In  <**author**>Victor E Neuberg</**author**>, <**title**>The Penny Histories</**title**>.  <**publisher**>OUP</**publisher**>   <**date**>1968</**date**>. </**bibl**> </**sourceDesc**> |
| **Example** | <**sourceDesc**>  <**p**>Born digital: no previous source exists.</**p**> </**sourceDesc**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <classRef key="model.pLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="1">    <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>    <classRef key="model.sourceDescPart"/>    <classRef key="model.listLike"/>   </alternate>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element sourceDesc {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.declarable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.declarable),  (  [tei\_model.pLike](#TEI.tei_model.pLike)+  | ( [tei\_model.biblLike](#TEI.tei_model.biblLike) | [tei\_model.sourceDescPart](#TEI.tei_model.sourceDescPart) | [tei\_model.listLike](#TEI.tei_model.listLike) )+  ) } |

## <standOff>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<standOff>** Functions as a container element for linked data, contextual information, and stand-off annotations embedded in a TEI document. [[16.10. The standOff Container](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SASOstdf)] | |
| **Module** | linking |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declaring (@decls) |
| **Member of** | model.resource |
| **Contained by** | **textstructure:** TEI |
| **May contain** | **linking:** alt altGrp annotation join joinGrp link linkGrp listAnnotation seg timeline  **namesdates:** listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation |
| **Example** | This example shows an encoding of morphosyntactic features similar to the encoding system used by [ISO 24611 (MAF)](#ISO24611).  <**TEI** xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  <**teiHeader**> <!-- ... -->  </**teiHeader**>  <**text**>   <**body**> <!-- ... -->    <**p**>     <**w** **xml:id**="w51">I</**w**>     <**w** **xml:id**="w52">wanna</**w**>     <**w** **xml:id**="w53">put</**w**>     <**w** **xml:id**="w54">up</**w**>     <**w** **xml:id**="w55">new</**w**>     <**w** **xml:id**="w56">wallpaper</**w**>     <**pc**>.</**pc**>    </**p**> <!-- ... -->   </**body**>  </**text**>  <**standOff** **type**="morphosyntax">   <**spanGrp** **type**="wordForm">    <**span** **ana**="#fs01" **target**="#w51"/>    <**span** **ana**="#fs02" **target**="#w52"/>    <**span** **ana**="#fs03" **target**="#w52"/>    <**span** **ana**="#fs04" **target**="#w53 #w54"/>    <**span** **ana**="#fs05" **target**="#w55"/>    <**span** **ana**="#fs06" **target**="#w56"/>   </**spanGrp**>   <**fs** **xml:id**="fs01">    <**f** **name**="lemma">     <**string**>I</**string**>    </**f**>    <**f** **name**="pos">     <**symbol** **value**="PP"/>    </**f**>   </**fs**>   <**fs** **xml:id**="fs02">    <**f** **name**="lemma">     <**string**>want</**string**>    </**f**>    <**f** **name**="pos">     <**symbol** **value**="VBP"/>    </**f**>   </**fs**>   <**fs** **xml:id**="fs03">    <**f** **name**="lemma">     <**string**>to</**string**>    </**f**>    <**f** **name**="pos">     <**symbol** **value**="TO"/>    </**f**>   </**fs**>   <**fs** **xml:id**="fs04">    <**f** **name**="lemma">     <**string**>put up</**string**>    </**f**>    <**f** **name**="pos">     <**symbol** **value**="VB"/>    </**f**>   </**fs**>   <**fs** **xml:id**="fs05">    <**f** **name**="lemma">     <**string**>new</**string**>    </**f**>    <**f** **name**="pos">     <**symbol** **value**="JJ"/>    </**f**>   </**fs**>   <**fs** **xml:id**="fs06">    <**f** **name**="lemma">     <**string**>wallpaper</**string**>    </**f**>    <**f** **name**="pos">     <**symbol** **value**="NN"/>    </**f**>   </**fs**>  </**standOff**> </**TEI**> |
| **Example** | This example shows an encoding of contextual information which is referred to from the main text.  <**TEI** xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  <**teiHeader**> <!-- ... -->  </**teiHeader**>  <**standOff**>   <**listPlace**>    <**place** **xml:id**="LATL">     <**placeName**>Atlanta</**placeName**>     <**location**>      <**region** **key**="US-GA">Georgia</**region**>      <**country** **key**="USA">United States of America</**country**>      <**geo**>33.755 -84.39</**geo**>     </**location**>     <**population** **quantity**="489359"      **source**="https://www.biggestuscities.com/city/atlanta-georgia" **type**="interpolatedCensus" **when**="1963"/>    </**place**>    <**place** **xml:id**="LBHM">     <**placeName**>Birmingham</**placeName**>     <**location**>      <**region** **key**="US-AL">Alabama</**region**>      <**country** **key**="USA">United States of America</**country**>      <**geo**>33.653333 -86.808889</**geo**>     </**location**>     <**population** **quantity**="332891"      **source**="https://www.biggestuscities.com/city/birmingham-alabama" **type**="interpolatedCensus" **when**="1963"/>    </**place**>   </**listPlace**>  </**standOff**>  <**text**>   <**body**> <!-- ... -->    <**p**>Moreover, I am <**choice**>      <**sic**>congnizant</**sic**>      <**corr**>cognizant</**corr**>     </**choice**> of the interrelatedness of all communities and    <**lb**/>states. I cannot sit idly by in <**placeName** **ref**="#LATL">Atlanta</**placeName**> and not be concerned about what happens    <**lb**/>in <**placeName** **ref**="#LBHM">Birmingham</**placeName**>. <**seg** **xml:id**="FQ17">Injustice anywhere is a threat to justice everywhere.</**seg**> We    <**lb**/>are caught in an inescapable network of mutuality, tied in a single garment    <**lb**/>of destiny. Whatever affects one directly affects all indirectly. Never    <**lb**/>again can we afford to live with the narrow, provincial <**soCalled** **rendition**="#Rqms">outside agitator</**soCalled**>     <**lb**/>idea. Anyone who lives inside the United States can never be considered    <**lb**/>an outsider anywhere in this country.</**p**> <!-- ... -->   </**body**>  </**text**> </**TEI**> |
| **Schematron** | <sch:assert test="@type or not(ancestor::tei:standOff)">This <sch:name/> element must have a @type attribute, since it is nested inside a <sch:name/> </sch:assert> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <classRef key="model.standOffPart"   maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element standOff {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_att.declaring.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.declaring),  [tei\_model.standOffPart](#TEI.tei_model.standOffPart)+ } |

## <state>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<state>** (state) contains a description of some status or quality attributed to a person, place, or organization often at some specific time or for a specific date range. [[13.3.1. Basic Principles](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPERSbp) [13.3.2.1. Personal Characteristics](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPERSEpc)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) |
| **Member of** | model.persStateLike model.placeStateLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** p q said title  **linking:** ab seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset org orgName persName persPronouns person personGrp persona place placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus state surname |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **linking:** ab  **namesdates:** state |
| **Note** | Where there is confusion between <trait> and <state> the more general purpose element <state> should be used even for unchanging characteristics. If you wish to distinguish between characteristics that are generally perceived to be time-bound states and those assumed to be fixed traits, then <trait> is available for the more static of these. The <state> element encodes characteristics which are sometimes assumed to change, often at specific times or over a date range, whereas the <trait> elements are used to record characteristics, such as eye-colour, which are less subject to change. Traits are typically, but not necessarily, independent of the volition or action of the holder. |
| **Example** | <**state** **ref**="#SCHOL" **type**="status">  <**label**>scholar</**label**> </**state**> |
| **Example** | <**org**>  <**orgName** **notAfter**="1960">The Silver Beetles</**orgName**>  <**orgName** **notBefore**="1960">The Beatles</**orgName**>  <**state** **from**="1960-08" **to**="1962-05"   **type**="membership">   <**desc**>    <**persName**>John Lennon</**persName**>    <**persName**>Paul McCartney</**persName**>    <**persName**>George Harrison</**persName**>    <**persName**>Stuart Sutcliffe</**persName**>    <**persName**>Pete Best</**persName**>   </**desc**>  </**state**>  <**state** **notBefore**="1963" **type**="membership">   <**desc**>    <**persName**>John Lennon</**persName**>    <**persName**>Paul McCartney</**persName**>    <**persName**>George Harrison</**persName**>    <**persName**>Ringo Starr</**persName**>   </**desc**>  </**state**> </**org**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <elementRef key="precision"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <alternate>    <elementRef key="state"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>    <sequence>     <classRef key="model.headLike"      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>     <classRef key="model.pLike"      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>     <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"      minOccurs="0">      <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>      <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>     </alternate>    </sequence>    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="0">     <classRef key="model.labelLike"/>     <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>     <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>    </alternate>   </alternate>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element state {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.datable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.datable),  [tei\_att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.editLike),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_att.naming.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.naming),  [tei\_att.dimensions.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.dimensions),  (  [precision](#TEI.precision)\*,  (  [tei\_state](#TEI.tei_state)+  | (  [tei\_model.headLike](#TEI.tei_model.headLike)\*,  [tei\_model.pLike](#TEI.tei_model.pLike)+,  ( [tei\_model.noteLike](#TEI.tei_model.noteLike) | [tei\_model.biblLike](#TEI.tei_model.biblLike) )\*  )  | ( [tei\_model.labelLike](#TEI.tei_model.labelLike) | [tei\_model.noteLike](#TEI.tei_model.noteLike) | [tei\_model.biblLike](#TEI.tei_model.biblLike) )\*  )  ) } |

## <surname>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<surname>** (surname) contains a family (inherited) name, as opposed to a given, baptismal, or nick name. [[13.2.1. Personal Names](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPER)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.personal (@full, @sort) (att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) ) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.persNamePart |
| **Contained by** | **core:** p q said title  **linking:** ab seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset org orgName persName persPronouns placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname |
| **May contain** | **core:** q said title  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName persPronouns placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  character data |
| **Example** | <**surname** **type**="combine">St John Stevas</**surname**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element surname {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.personal.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.personal),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_macro.phraseSeq](#TEI.tei_macro.phraseSeq)} |

## <teiHeader>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<teiHeader>** (TEI header) supplies descriptive and declarative metadata associated with a digital resource or set of resources. [[2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD11) [15.1. Varieties of Composite Text](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCDEF)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Contained by** | **textstructure:** TEI |
| **May contain** | **header:** fileDesc |
| **Note** | One of the few elements unconditionally required in any TEI document. |
| **Example** | <**teiHeader**>  <**fileDesc**>   <**titleStmt**>    <**title**>Shakespeare: the first folio (1623) in electronic form</**title**>    <**author**>Shakespeare, William (1564–1616)</**author**>    <**respStmt**>     <**resp**>Originally prepared by</**resp**>     <**name**>Trevor Howard-Hill</**name**>    </**respStmt**>    <**respStmt**>     <**resp**>Revised and edited by</**resp**>     <**name**>Christine Avern-Carr</**name**>    </**respStmt**>   </**titleStmt**>   <**publicationStmt**>    <**distributor**>Oxford Text Archive</**distributor**>    <**address**>     <**addrLine**>13 Banbury Road, Oxford OX2 6NN, UK</**addrLine**>    </**address**>    <**idno** **type**="OTA">119</**idno**>    <**availability**>     <**p**>Freely available on a non-commercial basis.</**p**>    </**availability**>    <**date** **when**="1968">1968</**date**>   </**publicationStmt**>   <**sourceDesc**>    <**bibl**>The first folio of Shakespeare, prepared by Charlton Hinman (The Norton Facsimile,        1968)</**bibl**>   </**sourceDesc**>  </**fileDesc**>  <**encodingDesc**>   <**projectDesc**>    <**p**>Originally prepared for use in the production of a series of old-spelling        concordances in 1968, this text was extensively checked and revised for use during the        editing of the new Oxford Shakespeare (Wells and Taylor, 1989).</**p**>   </**projectDesc**>   <**editorialDecl**>    <**correction**>     <**p**>Turned letters are silently corrected.</**p**>    </**correction**>    <**normalization**>     <**p**>Original spelling and typography is retained, except that long s and ligatured          forms are not encoded.</**p**>    </**normalization**>   </**editorialDecl**>   <**refsDecl** **xml:id**="ASLREF">    <**cRefPattern** **matchPattern**="(\S+) ([^.]+)\.(.\*)"     **replacementPattern**="#xpath(//div1[@n='$1']/div2/[@n='$2']//lb[@n='$3'])">     <**p**>A reference is created by assembling the following, in the reverse order as that          listed here: <**list**>       <**item**>the <**att**>n</**att**> value of the preceding <**gi**>lb</**gi**>       </**item**>       <**item**>a period</**item**>       <**item**>the <**att**>n</**att**> value of the ancestor <**gi**>div2</**gi**>       </**item**>       <**item**>a space</**item**>       <**item**>the <**att**>n</**att**> value of the parent <**gi**>div1</**gi**>       </**item**>      </**list**>     </**p**>    </**cRefPattern**>   </**refsDecl**>  </**encodingDesc**>  <**revisionDesc**>   <**list**>    <**item**>     <**date** **when**="1989-04-12">12 Apr 89</**date**> Last checked by CAC</**item**>    <**item**>     <**date** **when**="1989-03-01">1 Mar 89</**date**> LB made new file</**item**>   </**list**>  </**revisionDesc**> </**teiHeader**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <elementRef key="fileDesc"/>   <classRef key="model.teiHeaderPart"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <elementRef key="revisionDesc"    minOccurs="0"/>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element teiHeader {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  ( [tei\_fileDesc](#TEI.tei_fileDesc), [tei\_model.teiHeaderPart](#TEI.tei_model.teiHeaderPart)\*, [revisionDesc](#TEI.revisionDesc)? ) } |

## <terrain>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<terrain>** (terrain) contains information about the physical terrain of a place. [[13.3.4.3. States, Traits, and Events](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDGEOGste)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) |
| **Member of** | model.placeStateLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** p q said title  **linking:** ab seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset org orgName persName persPronouns place placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname terrain |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **linking:** ab  **namesdates:** terrain |
| **Example** | <**place** **xml:id**="KERG">  <**placeName**>Kerguelen Islands</**placeName**> <!-- ... -->  <**terrain**>   <**desc**>antarctic tundra</**desc**>  </**terrain**> <!-- ... --> </**place**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <elementRef key="precision"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <classRef key="model.headLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <alternate>    <classRef key="model.pLike"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>    <classRef key="model.labelLike"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>   </alternate>   <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"    minOccurs="0">    <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>    <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>   </alternate>   <elementRef key="terrain"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element terrain {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.datable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.datable),  [tei\_att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.editLike),  [tei\_att.naming.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.naming),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  (  [precision](#TEI.precision)\*,  [tei\_model.headLike](#TEI.tei_model.headLike)\*,  ( [tei\_model.pLike](#TEI.tei_model.pLike)+ | [tei\_model.labelLike](#TEI.tei_model.labelLike)+ ),  ( [tei\_model.noteLike](#TEI.tei_model.noteLike) | [tei\_model.biblLike](#TEI.tei_model.biblLike) )\*,  [tei\_terrain](#TEI.tei_terrain)\*  ) } |

## <text>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<text>** (text) contains a single text of any kind, whether unitary or composite, for example a poem or drama, a collection of essays, a novel, a dictionary, or a corpus sample. [[4. Default Text Structure](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DS) [15.1. Varieties of Composite Text](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCDEF)] | |
| **Module** | textstructure |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.declaring (@decls) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.written (@hand) |
| **Member of** | model.resource |
| **Contained by** | **textstructure:** TEI |
| **May contain** | **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline  **textstructure:** body |
| **Note** | This element should not be used to represent a text which is inserted at an arbitrary point within the structure of another, for example as in an embedded or quoted narrative; the <floatingText> is provided for this purpose. |
| **Example** | <**text**>  <**front**>   <**docTitle**>    <**titlePart**>Autumn Haze</**titlePart**>   </**docTitle**>  </**front**>  <**body**>   <**l**>Is it a dragonfly or a maple leaf</**l**>   <**l**>That settles softly down upon the water?</**l**>  </**body**> </**text**> |
| **Example** | The body of a text may be replaced by a group of nested texts, as in the following schematic:  <**text**>  <**front**> <!-- front matter for the whole group -->  </**front**>  <**group**>   <**text**> <!-- first text -->   </**text**>   <**text**> <!-- second text -->   </**text**>  </**group**> </**text**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <classRef key="model.global"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <sequence minOccurs="0">    <elementRef key="front"/>    <classRef key="model.global"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   </sequence>   <alternate>    <elementRef key="body"/>    <elementRef key="group"/>   </alternate>   <classRef key="model.global"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <sequence minOccurs="0">    <elementRef key="back"/>    <classRef key="model.global"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   </sequence>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element text {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.declaring.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.declaring),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_att.written.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.written),  (  [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global)\*,  ( [front](#TEI.front), [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global)\* )?,  ( [tei\_body](#TEI.tei_body) | [group](#TEI.group) ),  [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global)\*,  ( [back](#TEI.back), [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global)\* )?  ) } |

## <timeline>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<timeline>** (timeline) provides a set of ordered points in time which can be linked to elements of a spoken text to create a temporal alignment of that text. [[16.4.2. Placing Synchronous Events in Time](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SASYMP)] | |
| **Module** | linking |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **origin** | designates the origin of the timeline, i.e. the time at which it begins.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.pointer | | **Note** | If this attribute is not supplied, the implication is that the time of origin is not known. If it is supplied, it must point either to one of the <when> elements in its content, or to another <timeline> element. | | | **unit** | specifies the unit of time corresponding to the *@interval* value of the timeline or of its constituent points in time.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Suggested values include:** | **d** (days)  **h** (hours)  **min** (minutes)  **s** (seconds)  **ms** (milliseconds) | | | **interval** | specifies a time interval either as a positive integral value or using one of a set of predefined codes.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.interval | | **Note** | The value irregular indicates uncertainty about all the intervals in the timeline; the value regular indicates that all the intervals are evenly spaced, but the size of the intervals is not known; numeric values indicate evenly spaced values of the size specified. If individual points in time in the timeline are given different values for the *@interval* attribute, those values locally override the value given in the timeline. | | |
| **Member of** | model.global.meta |
| **Contained by** | **core:** p q said title  **linking:** ab seg standOff  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset orgName persName persPronouns person personGrp persona placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname  **textstructure:** body text |
| **May contain** | **linking:** when |
| **Example** | <**timeline** **unit**="ms" **xml:id**="TL01">  <**when** **absolute**="11:30:00" **xml:id**="TL-w0"/>  <**when** **interval**="unknown" **since**="#TL-w0"   **xml:id**="TL-w1"/>  <**when** **interval**="100" **since**="#TL-w1"   **xml:id**="TL-w2"/>  <**when** **interval**="200" **since**="#TL-w2"   **xml:id**="TL-w3"/>  <**when** **interval**="150" **since**="#TL-w3"   **xml:id**="TL-w4"/>  <**when** **interval**="250" **since**="#TL-w4"   **xml:id**="TL-w5"/>  <**when** **interval**="100" **since**="#TL-w5"   **xml:id**="TL-w6"/> </**timeline**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <elementRef key="when"   maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element timeline {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  attribute origin { text }?,  attribute unit { "d" | "h" | "min" | "s" | "ms" }?,  attribute interval { text }?,  [tei\_when](#TEI.tei_when)+ } |

## <title>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<title>** (title) contains a title for any kind of work. [[3.12.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COBICOR) [2.2.1. The Title Statement](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD21) [2.2.5. The Series Statement](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD26)] | |
| **Module** | core |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.canonical (@key, @ref) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.typed (type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | classifies the title according to some convenient typology.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Derived from** | att.typed | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Sample values include:** | **main** main title  **sub** (subordinate) subtitle, title of part  **alt** (alternate) alternate title, often in another language, by which the work is also known  **short** abbreviated form of title  **desc** (descriptive) descriptive paraphrase of the work functioning as a title | | **Note** | This attribute is provided for convenience in analysing titles and processing them according to their type; where such specialized processing is not necessary, there is no need for such analysis, and the entire title, including subtitles and any parallel titles, may be enclosed within a single <title> element. | | | **level** | indicates the bibliographic level for a title, that is, whether it identifies an article, book, journal, series, or unpublished material.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Legal values are:** | **a** (analytic) the title applies to an analytic item, such as an article, poem, or other work published as part of a larger item.  **m** (monographic) the title applies to a monograph such as a book or other item considered to be a distinct publication, including single volumes of multi-volume works  **j** (journal) the title applies to any serial or periodical publication such as a journal, magazine, or newspaper  **s** (series) the title applies to a series of otherwise distinct publications such as a collection  **u** (unpublished) the title applies to any unpublished material (including theses and dissertations unless published by a commercial press) | | **Note** | The level of a title is sometimes implied by its context: for example, a title appearing directly within an <analytic> element is ipso facto of level ‘a’, and one appearing within a <series> element of level ‘s’. For this reason, the *@level* attribute is not required in contexts where its value can be unambiguously inferred. Where it is supplied in such contexts, its value should not contradict the value implied by its parent element. | | |
| **Member of** | model.emphLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** p q said title  **header:** titleStmt  **linking:** ab seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset orgName persName persPronouns placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname |
| **May contain** | **core:** q said title  **linking:** alt altGrp anchor join joinGrp link linkGrp seg timeline  **namesdates:** addName affiliation bloc climate country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink objectName offset orgName persName persPronouns placeName population region roleName settlement state surname terrain trait  character data |
| **Note** | The attributes *@key* and *@ref*, inherited from the class att.canonical may be used to indicate the canonical form for the title; the former, by supplying (for example) the identifier of a record in some external library system; the latter by pointing to an XML element somewhere containing the canonical form of the title. |
| **Example** | <**title**>Information Technology and the Research Process: Proceedings of  a conference held at Cranfield Institute of Technology, UK,  18–21 July 1989</**title**> |
| **Example** | <**title**>Hardy's Tess of the D'Urbervilles: a machine readable  edition</**title**> |
| **Example** | <**title** **type**="full">  <**title** **type**="main">Synthèse</**title**>  <**title** **type**="sub">an international journal for    epistemology, methodology and history of    science</**title**> </**title**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element title {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.typed.attribute.subtype](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_att.canonical.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.canonical),  [tei\_att.datable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.datable),  attribute type { text }?,  attribute level { "a" | "m" | "j" | "s" | "u" }?,  [tei\_macro.paraContent](#TEI.tei_macro.paraContent)} |

## <titleStmt>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<titleStmt>** (title statement) groups information about the title of a work and those responsible for its content. [[2.2.1. The Title Statement](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD21) [2.2. The File Description](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD2)] | |
| **Module** | header |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) |
| **Contained by** | **header:** fileDesc |
| **May contain** | **core:** title |
| **Example** | <**titleStmt**>  <**title**>Capgrave's Life of St. John Norbert: a machine-readable transcription</**title**>  <**respStmt**>   <**resp**>compiled by</**resp**>   <**name**>P.J. Lucas</**name**>  </**respStmt**> </**titleStmt**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <elementRef key="title"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>   <classRef key="model.respLike"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element titleStmt {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  ( [tei\_title](#TEI.tei_title)+, [tei\_model.respLike](#TEI.tei_model.respLike)\* ) } |

## <trait>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<trait>** (trait) contains a description of some status or quality attributed to a person, place, or organization typically, but not necessarily, independent of the volition or action of the holder and usually not at some specific time or for a specific date range. [[13.3.1. Basic Principles](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPERSbp) [13.3.2.1. Personal Characteristics](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPERSEpc)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @instant) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) |
| **Member of** | model.persStateLike model.placeStateLike |
| **Contained by** | **core:** p q said title  **linking:** ab seg  **namesdates:** addName affiliation age birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName langKnown nameLink nationality objectName occupation offset org orgName persName persPronouns person personGrp persona place placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname trait |
| **May contain** | **core:** p  **linking:** ab  **namesdates:** trait |
| **Note** | Where there is confusion between <trait> and <state> the more general purpose element <state> should be used even for unchanging characteristics. If you wish to distinguish between characteristics that are generally perceived to be time-bound states and those assumed to be fixed traits, then <trait> is available for the more static of these. The <state> element encodes characteristics which are sometimes assumed to change, often at specific times or over a date range, whereas the <trait> elements are used to record characteristics, such as eye-colour, which are less subject to change. Traits are typically, but not necessarily, independent of the volition or action of the holder. |
| **Example** | <**trait** **type**="physical">  <**label**>Eye colour</**label**>  <**desc**>Blue</**desc**> </**trait**> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <sequence>   <elementRef key="precision"    maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>   <alternate>    <elementRef key="trait"     maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>    <sequence>     <classRef key="model.headLike"      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="0"/>     <classRef key="model.pLike"      maxOccurs="unbounded" minOccurs="1"/>     <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"      minOccurs="0">      <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>      <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>     </alternate>    </sequence>    <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"     minOccurs="0">     <classRef key="model.labelLike"/>     <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>     <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>    </alternate>   </alternate>  </sequence> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element trait {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  [tei\_att.datable.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.datable),  [tei\_att.editLike.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.editLike),  [tei\_att.naming.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.naming),  [tei\_att.typed.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.typed),  [tei\_att.dimensions.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.dimensions),  (  [precision](#TEI.precision)\*,  (  [tei\_trait](#TEI.tei_trait)+  | (  [tei\_model.headLike](#TEI.tei_model.headLike)\*,  [tei\_model.pLike](#TEI.tei_model.pLike)+,  ( [tei\_model.noteLike](#TEI.tei_model.noteLike) | [tei\_model.biblLike](#TEI.tei_model.biblLike) )\*  )  | ( [tei\_model.labelLike](#TEI.tei_model.labelLike) | [tei\_model.noteLike](#TEI.tei_model.noteLike) | [tei\_model.biblLike](#TEI.tei_model.biblLike) )\*  )  ) } |

## <when>

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **<when>** indicates a point in time either relative to other elements in the same timeline tag, or absolutely. [[16.4.2. Placing Synchronous Events in Time](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SASYMP)] | |
| **Module** | linking |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source))   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **absolute** | supplies an absolute value for the time.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.temporal.w3c | | **Note** | This attribute should always be specified on a <when> element which serves as the target for the *@origin* attribute of a <timeline>. | | | **unit** | specifies the unit of time in which the *@interval* value is expressed, if this is not inherited from the parent <timeline>.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Suggested values include:** | **d** (days)  **h** (hours)  **min** (minutes)  **s** (seconds)  **ms** (milliseconds) | | | **interval** | specifies a time interval either as a number or as one of the keywords defined by the datatype teidata.interval   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.interval | | | **since** | identifies the reference point for determining the time of the current <when> element, which is obtained by adding the interval to the time of the reference point.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.pointer | | **Note** | This attribute should point to another <when> element in the same <timeline>. If no value is supplied, and the *@absolute* attribute is also unspecified, then the reference point is understood to be the origin of the enclosing <timeline> tag. | | |
| **Contained by** | **linking:** timeline |
| **May contain** | Empty element |
| **Note** | On this element, the global *@xml:id* attribute must be supplied to specify an identifier for this point in time. The value used may be chosen freely provided that it is unique within the document and is a syntactically valid name. There is no requirement for values containing numbers to be in sequence. |
| **Example** | <**when** **interval**="20" **since**="#w2" **xml:id**="TW3"/> |
| **Content model** | <content>  <empty/> </content> |
| **Schema Declaration** | element when {  [tei\_att.global.attributes](#TEI.tei_att.global),  attribute absolute { text }?,  attribute unit { "d" | "h" | "min" | "s" | "ms" }?,  attribute interval { text }?,  attribute since { text }?,  empty } |

# Model classes

## model.addressLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.addressLike**   groups elements used to represent a postal or email address. [[1. The TEI Infrastructure](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#ST)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | location model.pPart.data |
| **Members** | affiliation |

## model.annotationLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.annotationLike**   groups elements used to represent annotations. [[16.10. The standOff Container](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SASOstdf)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | listAnnotation model.standOffPart |
| **Members** | annotation |

## model.attributable

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.attributable**   groups elements that contain a word or phrase that can be attributed to a source. [[3.3.3. Quotation](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQQ) [4.3.2. Floating Texts](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSFLT)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | macro.phraseSeq model.inter |
| **Members** | [model.quoteLike](#TEI.model.quoteLike) said |

## model.common

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.common**   groups common chunk- and inter-level elements. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | body |
| **Members** | model.divPart [[model.lLike](#TEI.model.lLike) model.pLike [ab p] ] model.inter [model.attributable [[model.quoteLike](#TEI.model.quoteLike) said] [model.biblLike](#TEI.model.biblLike) [model.egLike](#TEI.model.egLike) [model.labelLike](#TEI.model.labelLike) model.listLike [listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation] [model.oddDecl](#TEI.model.oddDecl) [model.stageLike](#TEI.model.stageLike)] q |
| **Note** | This class defines the set of chunk- and inter-level elements; it is used in many content models, including those for textual divisions. |

## model.divBottom

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.divBottom**   groups elements appearing at the end of a text division. [[4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSDTB)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | body |
| **Members** | [model.divBottomPart](#TEI.model.divBottomPart) [model.divWrapper](#TEI.model.divWrapper) |

## model.divPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.divPart**   groups paragraph-level elements appearing directly within divisions. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | macro.specialPara model.common |
| **Members** | [model.lLike](#TEI.model.lLike) model.pLike [ab p] |
| **Note** | Note that this element class does not include members of the model.inter class, which can appear either within or between paragraph-level items. |

## model.divTop

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.divTop**   groups elements appearing at the beginning of a text division. [[4.2. Elements Common to All Divisions](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSDTB)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | body |
| **Members** | model.divTopPart [[model.headLike](#TEI.model.headLike)] [model.divWrapper](#TEI.model.divWrapper) |

## model.divTopPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.divTopPart**   groups elements which can occur only at the beginning of a text division. [[4.6. Title Pages](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSTITL)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.divTop |
| **Members** | [model.headLike](#TEI.model.headLike) |

## model.emphLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.emphLike**   groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct and to which a specific function can be attributed. [[3.3. Highlighting and Quotation](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQ)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.highlighted model.limitedPhrase |
| **Members** | title |

## model.eventLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.eventLike**   groups elements which describe events. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | listEvent model.orgPart model.personPart place |
| **Members** | event listEvent |

## model.global

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.global**   groups elements which may appear at any point within a TEI text. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | body macro.paraContent macro.phraseSeq macro.phraseSeq.limited macro.specialPara person personGrp persona text |
| **Members** | [model.global.edit](#TEI.model.global.edit) model.global.meta [alt altGrp join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline] model.milestoneLike [anchor] [model.noteLike](#TEI.model.noteLike) |

## model.global.meta

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.global.meta**   groups globally available elements which describe the status of other elements. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.global model.standOffPart |
| **Members** | alt altGrp join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline |
| **Note** | Elements in this class are typically used to hold groups of links or of abstract interpretations, or by provide indications of certainty etc. It may find be convenient to localize all metadata elements, for example to contain them within the same divison as the elements that they relate to; or to locate them all to a division of their own. They may however appear at any point in a TEI text. |

## model.hiLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.hiLike**   groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct but to which no specific function can be attributed. [[3.3. Highlighting and Quotation](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQ)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.highlighted model.limitedPhrase |
| **Members** | q |

## model.highlighted

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.highlighted**   groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct. [[3.3. Highlighting and Quotation](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQ)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.phrase |
| **Members** | model.emphLike [title] model.hiLike [q] |

## model.inter

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.inter**   groups elements which can appear either within or between paragraph-like elements. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | macro.paraContent macro.specialPara model.common |
| **Members** | model.attributable [[model.quoteLike](#TEI.model.quoteLike) said] [model.biblLike](#TEI.model.biblLike) [model.egLike](#TEI.model.egLike) [model.labelLike](#TEI.model.labelLike) model.listLike [listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation] [model.oddDecl](#TEI.model.oddDecl) [model.stageLike](#TEI.model.stageLike) |

## model.limitedPhrase

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.limitedPhrase**   groups phrase-level elements excluding those elements primarily intended for transcription of existing sources. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | macro.phraseSeq.limited |
| **Members** | model.emphLike [title] model.hiLike [q] model.pPart.data [model.addressLike [affiliation] [model.dateLike](#TEI.model.dateLike) model.measureLike [geo] model.nameLike [model.nameLike.agent [orgName persName] model.offsetLike [geogFeat offset] model.persNamePart [addName forename genName nameLink persPronouns roleName surname] model.placeStateLike [model.placeNamePart [bloc country district geogName placeName region settlement] climate location population state terrain trait] objectName] ] [model.pPart.editorial](#TEI.model.pPart.editorial) [model.pPart.msdesc](#TEI.model.pPart.msdesc) [model.phrase.xml](#TEI.model.phrase.xml) [model.ptrLike](#TEI.model.ptrLike) |

## model.listLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.listLike**   groups list-like elements. [[3.8. Lists](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COLI)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.inter model.standOffPart sourceDesc |
| **Members** | listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation |

## model.measureLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.measureLike**   groups elements which denote a number, a quantity, a measurement, or similar piece of text that conveys some numerical meaning. [[3.6.3. Numbers and Measures](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONANU)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | location model.pPart.data |
| **Members** | geo |

## model.milestoneLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.milestoneLike**   groups milestone-style elements used to represent reference systems. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC) [3.11.3. Milestone Elements](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CORS5)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.global org |
| **Members** | anchor |

## model.nameLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.nameLike**   groups elements which name or refer to a person, place, or organization. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.pPart.data org |
| **Members** | model.nameLike.agent [orgName persName] model.offsetLike [geogFeat offset] model.persNamePart [addName forename genName nameLink persPronouns roleName surname] model.placeStateLike [model.placeNamePart [bloc country district geogName placeName region settlement] climate location population state terrain trait] objectName |
| **Note** | A superset of the naming elements that may appear in datelines, addresses, statements of responsibility, etc. |

## model.nameLike.agent

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.nameLike.agent**   groups elements which contain names of individuals or corporate bodies. [[3.6. Names, Numbers, Dates, Abbreviations, and Addresses](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONA)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.nameLike |
| **Members** | orgName persName |
| **Note** | This class is used in the content model of elements which reference names of people or organizations. |

## model.objectLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.objectLike**   groups elements which describe objects. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | listObject |
| **Members** | listObject object |

## model.offsetLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.offsetLike**   groups elements which can appear only as part of a place name. [[13.2.3. Place Names](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPLAC)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | location model.nameLike |
| **Members** | geogFeat offset |

## model.orgPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.orgPart**   groups elements which form part of the description of an organization. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | org |
| **Members** | model.eventLike [event listEvent] listOrg listPerson listPlace |

## model.pLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.pLike**   groups paragraph-like elements. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | climate event langKnowledge listRelation model.divPart nym object org person personGrp persona place population publicationStmt sourceDesc state terrain trait |
| **Members** | ab p |

## model.pPart.data

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.pPart.data**   groups phrase-level elements containing names, dates, numbers, measures, and similar data. [[3.6. Names, Numbers, Dates, Abbreviations, and Addresses](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONA)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.limitedPhrase model.phrase |
| **Members** | model.addressLike [affiliation] [model.dateLike](#TEI.model.dateLike) model.measureLike [geo] model.nameLike [model.nameLike.agent [orgName persName] model.offsetLike [geogFeat offset] model.persNamePart [addName forename genName nameLink persPronouns roleName surname] model.placeStateLike [model.placeNamePart [bloc country district geogName placeName region settlement] climate location population state terrain trait] objectName] |

## model.pPart.edit

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.pPart.edit**   groups phrase-level elements for simple editorial correction and transcription. [[3.5. Simple Editorial Changes](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COED)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.phrase |
| **Members** | [model.pPart.editorial](#TEI.model.pPart.editorial) [model.pPart.transcriptional](#TEI.model.pPart.transcriptional) |

## model.persNamePart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.persNamePart**   groups elements which form part of a personal name. [[13.2.1. Personal Names](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPER)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Used by** | model.nameLike |
| **Members** | addName forename genName nameLink persPronouns roleName surname |

## model.persStateLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.persStateLike**   groups elements describing changeable characteristics of a person which have a definite duration, for example occupation, residence, or name. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.personPart |
| **Members** | affiliation age education faith floruit langKnowledge nationality occupation persName persPronouns persona residence sex socecStatus state trait |
| **Note** | These characteristics of an individual are typically a consequence of their own action or that of others. |

## model.personLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.personLike**   groups elements which provide information about people and their relationships. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | listPerson org |
| **Members** | org person personGrp |

## model.personPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.personPart**   groups elements which form part of the description of a person. [[15.2.2. The Participant Description](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAHPA)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | person personGrp persona |
| **Members** | [model.biblLike](#TEI.model.biblLike) model.eventLike [event listEvent] model.persStateLike [affiliation age education faith floruit langKnowledge nationality occupation persName persPronouns persona residence sex socecStatus state trait] birth death |

## model.phrase

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.phrase**   groups elements which can occur at the level of individual words or phrases. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | macro.paraContent macro.phraseSeq macro.specialPara |
| **Members** | [model.graphicLike](#TEI.model.graphicLike) model.highlighted [model.emphLike [title] model.hiLike [q] ] [model.lPart](#TEI.model.lPart) model.pPart.data [model.addressLike [affiliation] [model.dateLike](#TEI.model.dateLike) model.measureLike [geo] model.nameLike [model.nameLike.agent [orgName persName] model.offsetLike [geogFeat offset] model.persNamePart [addName forename genName nameLink persPronouns roleName surname] model.placeStateLike [model.placeNamePart [bloc country district geogName placeName region settlement] climate location population state terrain trait] objectName] ] model.pPart.edit [[model.pPart.editorial](#TEI.model.pPart.editorial) [model.pPart.transcriptional](#TEI.model.pPart.transcriptional)] [model.pPart.msdesc](#TEI.model.pPart.msdesc) [model.phrase.xml](#TEI.model.phrase.xml) [model.ptrLike](#TEI.model.ptrLike) model.segLike [seg] [model.specDescLike](#TEI.model.specDescLike) |
| **Note** | This class of elements can occur within paragraphs, list items, lines of verse, etc. |

## model.placeLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.placeLike**   groups elements used to provide information about places and their relationships. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | listPlace org place |
| **Members** | place |

## model.placeNamePart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.placeNamePart**   groups elements which form part of a place name. [[13.2.3. Place Names](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPLAC)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | location model.placeStateLike objectIdentifier |
| **Members** | bloc country district geogName placeName region settlement |

## model.placeStateLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.placeStateLike**   groups elements which describe changing states of a place. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.nameLike place |
| **Members** | model.placeNamePart [bloc country district geogName placeName region settlement] climate location population state terrain trait |

## model.publicationStmtPart.detail

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.publicationStmtPart.detail**   groups the agency-specific child elements of the <publicationStmt> element of the TEI header. [[2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD24)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | publicationStmt |
| **Members** | [model.ptrLike](#TEI.model.ptrLike) |
| **Note** | A ‘detail’ child element may not occur unless an ‘agency’ child element precedes it.  See also model.publicationStmtPart.agency. |

## model.resource

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.resource**   groups separate elements which constitute the content of a digital resource, as opposed to its metadata. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | TEI |
| **Members** | standOff text |

## model.segLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.segLike**   groups elements used for arbitrary segmentation. [[16.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SASE) [17.1. Linguistic Segment Categories](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/AI.html#AILC)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | model.phrase |
| **Members** | seg |
| **Note** | The principles on which segmentation is carried out, and any special codes or attribute values used, should be defined explicitly in the <segmentation> element of the <encodingDesc> within the associated TEI header. |

## model.standOffPart

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **model.standOffPart**   groups elements which may be used as children of <standOff>. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | standOff |
| **Members** | model.annotationLike [annotation] [model.biblLike](#TEI.model.biblLike) model.global.meta [alt altGrp join joinGrp link linkGrp timeline] model.listLike [listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation] listAnnotation seg |

# Attribute classes

## att.ascribed

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.ascribed**   provides attributes for elements representing speech or action that can be ascribed to a specific individual. [[3.3.3. Quotation](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQQ) [8.3. Elements Unique to Spoken Texts](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TS.html#TSBA)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | att.ascribed.directed [q said] |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **who** | indicates the person, or group of people, to whom the element content is ascribed.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace | | In the following example from Hamlet, speeches (<sp>) in the body of the play are linked to <castItem> elements in the <castList> using the *@who* attribute.  <**castItem** **type**="role">  <**role** **xml:id**="Barnardo">Bernardo</**role**> </**castItem**> <**castItem** **type**="role">  <**role** **xml:id**="Francisco">Francisco</**role**>  <**roleDesc**>a soldier</**roleDesc**> </**castItem**> <!-- ... --> <**sp** **who**="#Barnardo">  <**speaker**>Bernardo</**speaker**>  <**l** **n**="1">Who's there?</**l**> </**sp**> <**sp** **who**="#Francisco">  <**speaker**>Francisco</**speaker**>  <**l** **n**="2">Nay, answer me: stand, and unfold yourself.</**l**> </**sp**> | | | **Note** | For transcribed speech, this will typically identify a participant or participant group; in other contexts, it will point to any identified <person> element. | | |

## att.ascribed.directed

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.ascribed.directed**   provides attributes for elements representing speech or action that can be directed at a group or individual. [[3.3.3. Quotation](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQQ) [8.3. Elements Unique to Spoken Texts](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TS.html#TSBA)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | q said |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.ascribed (@who)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **toWhom** | indicates the person, or group of people, to whom a speech act or action is directed.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace | | In the following example from Mary Pix's The False Friend, speeches (<sp>) in the body of the play are linked to <castItem> elements in the <castList> using the *@toWhom* attribute, which is used to specify who the speech is directed to. Additionally, the <stage> includes *@toWhom* to indicate the directionality of the action.  <**castItem** **type**="role">  <**role** **xml:id**="emil">Emilius.</**role**> </**castItem**> <**castItem** **type**="role">  <**role** **xml:id**="lov">Lovisa</**role**> </**castItem**> <**castItem** **type**="role">  <**role** **xml:id**="serv">A servant</**role**> </**castItem**> <!-- ... --> <**sp** **toWhom**="#lov"  **who**="#emil">  <**speaker**>Emil.</**speaker**>  <**l** **n**="1">My love!</**l**> </**sp**> <**sp** **toWhom**="#emil"  **who**="#lov">  <**speaker**>Lov.</**speaker**>  <**l** **n**="2">I have no Witness of my Noble Birth</**l**>  <**stage** **toWhom**="#serv"   **who**="emil">Pointing to her Woman.</**stage**>  <**l**>But that poor helpless wretch——</**l**> </**sp**> | | | **Note** | To indicate the recipient of written correspondence, use the elements used in section [2.4.6. Correspondence Description](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/HD.html#HD44CD), rather than a *@toWhom* attribute. | | |

## att.canonical

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.canonical**   provides attributes which can be used to associate a representation such as a name or title with canonical information about the object being named or referenced. [[13.1.1. Linking Names and Their Referents](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDATTSnr)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | att.naming [att.personal [addName forename genName objectName orgName persName placeName roleName surname] affiliation birth bloc climate country death district education event geogFeat geogName nationality occupation offset population region residence settlement socecStatus state terrain trait] faith object relation title |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **key** | provides an externally-defined means of identifying the entity (or entities) being named, using a coded value of some kind.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.text | | <**author**>  <**name** **key**="name 427308"   **type**="organisation">[New Zealand Parliament, Legislative Council]</**name**> </**author**> | | | <**author**>  <**name** **key**="Hugo, Victor (1802-1885)"   **ref**="http://www.idref.fr/026927608">Victor Hugo</**name**> </**author**> | | | **Note** | The value may be a unique identifier from a database, or any other externally-defined string identifying the referent.  No particular syntax is proposed for the values of the *@key* attribute, since its form will depend entirely on practice within a given project. For the same reason, this attribute is not recommended in data interchange, since there is no way of ensuring that the values used by one project are distinct from those used by another. In such a situation, a preferable approach for magic tokens which follows standard practice on the Web is to use a *@ref* attribute whose value is a tag URI as defined in [RFC 4151](#RFC4151). | | | **ref** | (reference) provides an explicit means of locating a full definition or identity for the entity being named by means of one or more URIs.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace | | <**name** **ref**="http://viaf.org/viaf/109557338"  **type**="person">Seamus Heaney</**name**> | | | **Note** | The value must point directly to one or more XML elements or other resources by means of one or more URIs, separated by whitespace. If more than one is supplied the implication is that the name identifies several distinct entities. | | |

## att.datable

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.datable**   provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain dates, times, or datable events. [[3.6.4. Dates and Times](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONADA) [13.4. Dates](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDDATE)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | affiliation age birth bloc climate country death district education event faith floruit geogFeat geogName langKnowledge langKnown location nationality objectName occupation offset orgName persName persPronouns placeName population region relation residence settlement sex socecStatus state terrain title trait |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to) att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso) att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **calendar** | indicates the system or calendar to which the date represented by the content of this element belongs.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.pointer | | **Schematron** | <sch:rule context="tei:\*[@calendar]"> <sch:assert test="string-length(.) gt 0"> @calendar indicates the system or calendar to which the date represented by the content of this element belongs, but this <sch:name/> element has no textual content.</sch:assert> </sch:rule> | | He was born on <**date** **calendar**="#gregorian">Feb. 22, 1732</**date**> (<**date** **calendar**="#julian"  **when**="1732-02-22"> Feb. 11, 1731/32,  O.S.</**date**>). | | | **Note** | Note that the *@calendar* attribute (unlike *@datingMethod* defined in att.datable.custom) defines the calendar system of the date in the original material defined by the parent element, *not* the calendar to which the date is normalized. | | | **period** | supplies a pointer to some location defining a named period of time within which the datable item is understood to have occurred.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.pointer | | |
| **Note** | This ‘superclass’ provides attributes that can be used to provide normalized values of temporal information. By default, the attributes from the att.datable.w3c class are provided. If the module for names & dates is loaded, this class also provides attributes from the att.datable.iso and att.datable.custom classes. In general, the possible values of attributes restricted to the W3C datatypes form a subset of those values available via the ISO 8601 standard. However, the greater expressiveness of the ISO datatypes may not be needed, and there exists much greater software support for the W3C datatypes. |

## att.datable.custom

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.datable.custom**   provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain datable events to a custom dating system (i.e. other than the Gregorian used by W3 and ISO). [[13.4. Dates](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDDATE)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Members** | att.datable [affiliation age birth bloc climate country death district education event faith floruit geogFeat geogName langKnowledge langKnown location nationality objectName occupation offset orgName persName persPronouns placeName population region relation residence settlement sex socecStatus state terrain title trait] |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **when-custom** | supplies the value of a date or time in some custom standard form.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace | | The following are examples of custom date or time formats that are *not* valid ISO or W3C format normalizations, normalized to a different dating system  <**p**>Alhazen died in Cairo on the <**date** **when**="1040-03-06"   **when-custom**="431-06-12"> 12th day of Jumada t-Tania, 430 AH  </**date**>.</**p**> <**p**>The current world will end at the <**date** **when**="2012-12-21"   **when-custom**="13.0.0.0.0">end of B'ak'tun 13</**date**>.</**p**> <**p**>The Battle of Meggidu  (<**date** **when-custom**="Thutmose\_III:23">23rd year of reign of Thutmose III</**date**>).</**p**> <**p**>Esidorus bixit in pace annos LXX plus minus sub <**date** **when-custom**="Ind:4-10-11">die XI mensis Octobris indictione IIII</**date**> </**p**>  Not all custom date formulations will have Gregorian equivalents.The *@when-custom* attribute and other custom dating are not constrained to a datatype by the TEI, but individual projects are recommended to regularize and document their dating formats. | | | | **notBefore-custom** | specifies the earliest possible date for the event in some custom standard form.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace | | | **notAfter-custom** | specifies the latest possible date for the event in some custom standard form.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace | | | **from-custom** | indicates the starting point of the period in some custom standard form.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace | | <**event** **datingMethod**="#julian"  **from-custom**="1666-09-02"  **to-custom**="1666-09-05"  **xml:id**="FIRE1">  <**head**>The Great Fire of London</**head**>  <**p**>The Great Fire of London burned through a large part    of the city of London.</**p**> </**event**> | | | | **to-custom** | indicates the ending point of the period in some custom standard form.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace | | | **datingPoint** | supplies a pointer to some location defining a named point in time with reference to which the datable item is understood to have occurred   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.pointer | | | **datingMethod** | supplies a pointer to a <calendar> element or other means of interpreting the values of the custom dating attributes.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.pointer | | Contayning the Originall, Antiquity, Increaſe, Moderne  eſtate, and deſcription of that Citie, written in the yeare <**date** **calendar**="#julian"  **datingMethod**="#julian"  **when-custom**="1598">1598</**date**>. by Iohn Stow  Citizen of London.  In this example, the *@calendar* attribute points to a <calendar> element for the Julian calendar, specifying that the text content of the <date> element is a Julian date, and the *@datingMethod* attribute also points to the Julian calendar to indicate that the content of the *@when-custom* attribute value is Julian too. | | | <**date** **datingMethod**="#creationOfWorld"  **when**="1382-06-28"  **when-custom**="6890-06-20"> μηνὶ Ἰουνίου εἰς <**num**>κ</**num**> ἔτους <**num**>ςωϞ</**num**> </**date**>  In this example, a date is given in a Mediaeval text measured "from the creation of the world", which is normalised (in *@when*) to the Gregorian date, but is also normalized (in *@when-custom*) to a machine-actionable, numeric version of the date from the Creation. | | | **Note** | Note that the *@datingMethod* attribute (unlike *@calendar* defined in att.datable) defines the calendar or dating system to which the date described by the parent element is normalized (i.e. in the *@when-custom* or other *@X-custom* attributes), *not* the calendar of the original date in the element. | | |

## att.datable.iso

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.datable.iso**   provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain datable events using the ISO 8601 standard. [[3.6.4. Dates and Times](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONADA) [13.4. Dates](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDDATE)] | |
| **Module** | namesdates |
| **Members** | att.datable [affiliation age birth bloc climate country death district education event faith floruit geogFeat geogName langKnowledge langKnown location nationality objectName occupation offset orgName persName persPronouns placeName population region relation residence settlement sex socecStatus state terrain title trait] |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **when-iso** | supplies the value of a date or time in a standard form.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.temporal.iso | | The following are examples of ISO date, time, and date & time formats that are *not* valid W3C format normalizations.  <**date** **when-iso**="1996-09-24T07:25+00">Sept. 24th, 1996 at 3:25 in the morning</**date**> <**date** **when-iso**="1996-09-24T03:25-04">Sept. 24th, 1996 at 3:25 in the morning</**date**> <**time** **when-iso**="1999-01-04T20:42-05">4 Jan 1999 at 8:42 pm</**time**> <**time** **when-iso**="1999-W01-1T20,70-05">4 Jan 1999 at 8:42 pm</**time**> <**date** **when-iso**="2006-05-18T10:03">a few minutes after ten in the morning on Thu 18 May</**date**> <**time** **when-iso**="03:00">3 A.M.</**time**> <**time** **when-iso**="14">around two</**time**> <**time** **when-iso**="15,5">half past three</**time**>  All of the examples of the *@when* attribute in the att.datable.w3c class are also valid with respect to this attribute. | | | He likes to be punctual. I said <**q**>  <**time** **when-iso**="12">around noon</**time**> </**q**>, and he showed up at <**time** **when-iso**="12:00:00">12 O'clock</**time**> on the dot.  The second occurence of <time> could have been encoded with the *@when* attribute, as 12:00:00 is a valid time with respect to the W3C *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition* specification. The first occurence could not. | | | | **notBefore-iso** | specifies the earliest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.temporal.iso | | | **notAfter-iso** | specifies the latest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.temporal.iso | | | **from-iso** | indicates the starting point of the period in standard form.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.temporal.iso | | | **to-iso** | indicates the ending point of the period in standard form.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.temporal.iso | | |
| **Note** | The value of these attributes should be a normalized representation of the date, time, or combined date & time intended, in any of the standard formats specified by ISO 8601, using the Gregorian calendar.  If both *@when-iso* and *@dur-iso* are specified, the values should be interpreted as indicating a span of time by its starting time (or date) and duration. That is,  <**date** **dur-iso**="P8D" **when-iso**="2007-06-01"/>  indicates the same time period as  <**date** **when-iso**="2007-06-01/P8D"/>  In providing a ‘regularized’ form, no claim is made that the form in the source text is incorrect; the regularized form is simply that chosen as the main form for purposes of unifying variant forms under a single heading. |

## att.datable.w3c

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.datable.w3c**   provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain datable events conforming to the W3C *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition*. [[3.6.4. Dates and Times](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONADA) [13.4. Dates](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDDATE)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | att.datable [affiliation age birth bloc climate country death district education event faith floruit geogFeat geogName langKnowledge langKnown location nationality objectName occupation offset orgName persName persPronouns placeName population region relation residence settlement sex socecStatus state terrain title trait] |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **when** | supplies the value of the date or time in a standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.temporal.w3c | | Examples of W3C date, time, and date & time formats.  <**p**>  <**date** **when**="1945-10-24">24 Oct 45</**date**>  <**date** **when**="1996-09-24T07:25:00Z">September 24th, 1996 at 3:25 in the morning</**date**>  <**time** **when**="1999-01-04T20:42:00-05:00">Jan 4 1999 at 8 pm</**time**>  <**time** **when**="14:12:38">fourteen twelve and 38 seconds</**time**>  <**date** **when**="1962-10">October of 1962</**date**>  <**date** **when**="--06-12">June 12th</**date**>  <**date** **when**="---01">the first of the month</**date**>  <**date** **when**="--08">August</**date**>  <**date** **when**="2006">MMVI</**date**>  <**date** **when**="0056">AD 56</**date**>  <**date** **when**="-0056">56 BC</**date**> </**p**> | | | This list begins in  the year 1632, more precisely on Trinity Sunday, i.e. the Sunday after  Pentecost, in that year the <**date** **calendar**="#julian"  **when**="1632-06-06">27th of May (old style)</**date**>. | | | <**opener**>  <**dateline**>   <**placeName**>Dorchester, Village,</**placeName**>   <**date** **when**="1828-03-02">March 2d. 1828.</**date**>  </**dateline**>  <**salute**>To    Mrs. Cornell,</**salute**> Sunday <**time** **when**="12:00:00">noon.</**time**> </**opener**> | | | | **notBefore** | specifies the earliest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.temporal.w3c | | | **notAfter** | specifies the latest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.temporal.w3c | | | **from** | indicates the starting point of the period in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.temporal.w3c | | | **to** | indicates the ending point of the period in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.temporal.w3c | | |
| **Schematron** | <sch:rule context="tei:\*[@when]"> <sch:report role="nonfatal"  test="@notBefore|@notAfter|@from|@to">The @when attribute cannot be used with any other att.datable.w3c attributes.</sch:report> </sch:rule> |
| **Schematron** | <sch:rule context="tei:\*[@from]"> <sch:report role="nonfatal"  test="@notBefore">The @from and @notBefore attributes cannot be used together.</sch:report> </sch:rule> |
| **Schematron** | <sch:rule context="tei:\*[@to]"> <sch:report role="nonfatal"  test="@notAfter">The @to and @notAfter attributes cannot be used together.</sch:report> </sch:rule> |
| **Example** | <**date** **from**="1863-05-28" **to**="1863-06-01">28 May through 1 June 1863</**date**> |
| **Note** | The value of these attributes should be a normalized representation of the date, time, or combined date & time intended, in any of the standard formats specified by *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition*, using the Gregorian calendar.  The most commonly-encountered format for the date portion of a temporal attribute is yyyy-mm-dd, but yyyy, --mm, ---dd, yyyy-mm, or --mm-dd may also be used. For the time part, the form hh:mm:ss is used.  Note that this format does not currently permit use of the value 0000 to represent the year 1 BCE; instead the value -0001 should be used. |

## att.datcat

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.datcat**   provides the *@dcr:datacat* and *@dcr:ValueDatacat* attributes which are used to align XML elements or attributes with the appropriate Data Categories (DCs) defined by the ISO 12620:2009 standard and stored in the Web repository called ISOCat at <http://www.isocat.org/>. [[9.5.2. Lexical View](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DI.html#DIMVLV) [18.3. Other Atomic Feature Values](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/FS.html#FSSY)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | att.segLike [seg] |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **datcat** | contains a PID (persistent identifier) that aligns the given element with the appropriate Data Category (or categories) in ISOcat.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace | | | **valueDatcat** | contains a PID (persistent identifier) that aligns the content of the given element or the value of the given attribute with the appropriate simple Data Category (or categories) in ISOcat.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace | | |
| **Example** | In this example *@dcr:datcat* relates the feature name to the data category "partOfSpeech" and *@dcr:valueDatcat* the feature value to the data category "commonNoun". Both these data categories reside in the ISOcat DCR at [www.isocat.org](http://www.isocat.org), which is the DCR used by ISO TC37 and hosted by its registration authority, the MPI for Psycholinguistics in Nijmegen.  <**fs**    xmlns:dcr="http://www.isocat.org/ns/dcr">  <**f** **dcr:datcat**="http://www.isocat.org/datcat/DC-1345"   **dcr:valueDatcat**="http://www.isocat.org/datcat/DC-1256" **fVal**="#commonNoun" **name**="POS"/> </**fs**> |
| **Note** | ISO 12620:2009 is a standard describing the data model and procedures for a Data Category Registry (DCR). Data categories are defined as elementary descriptors in a linguistic structure. In the DCR data model each data category gets assigned a unique Peristent IDentifier (PID), i.e., an URI. Linguistic resources or preferably their schemas that make use of data categories from a DCR should refer to them using this PID. For XML-based resources, like TEI documents, ISO 12620:2009 normative Annex A gives a small Data Category Reference XML vocabulary (also available online at <http://www.isocat.org/12620/>), which provides two attributes, *@dcr:datcat* and *@dcr:valueDatcat*. |

## att.declarable

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.declarable**   provides attributes for those elements in the TEI header which may be independently selected by means of the special purpose *@decls* attribute. [[15.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace sourceDesc |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **default** | indicates whether or not this element is selected by default when its parent is selected.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.truthValue | | **Legal values are:** | **true** This element is selected if its parent is selected  **false** This element can only be selected explicitly, unless it is the only one of its kind, in which case it is selected if its parent is selected. [Default] | | |
| **Note** | The rules governing the association of declarable elements with individual parts of a TEI text are fully defined in chapter [15.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS). Only one element of a particular type may have a *@default* attribute with a value of true. |

## att.declaring

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.declaring**   provides attributes for elements which may be independently associated with a particular declarable element within the header, thus overriding the inherited default for that element. [[15.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | ab body geo listAnnotation object p standOff text |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **decls** | identifies one or more declarable elements within the header, which are understood to apply to the element bearing this attribute and its content.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace | | |
| **Note** | The rules governing the association of declarable elements with individual parts of a TEI text are fully defined in chapter [15.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CC.html#CCAS). |

## att.dimensions

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.dimensions**   provides attributes for describing the size of physical objects. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | age birth death floruit geogFeat offset population state trait |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **unit** | names the unit used for the measurement   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Suggested values include:** | **cm** (centimetres)  **mm** (millimetres)  **in** (inches)  **line** lines of text  **char** (characters) characters of text | | | **quantity** | specifies the length in the units specified   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.numeric | | | **extent** | indicates the size of the object concerned using a project-specific vocabulary combining quantity and units in a single string of words.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.text | | <**gap** **extent**="5 words"/> | | | <**height** **extent**="half the page"/> | | | | **precision** | characterizes the precision of the values specified by the other attributes.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.certainty | | | **scope** | where the measurement summarizes more than one observation, specifies the applicability of this measurement.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Sample values include:** | **all** measurement applies to all instances.  **most** measurement applies to most of the instances inspected.  **range** measurement applies to only the specified range of instances. | | |

## att.docStatus

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.docStatus**   provides attributes for use on metadata elements describing the status of a document. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | object |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **status** | describes the status of a document either currently or, when associated with a dated element, at the time indicated.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Sample values include:** | **approved**  **candidate**  **cleared**  **deprecated**  **draft** [Default]  **embargoed**  **expired**  **frozen**  **galley**  **proposed**  **published**  **recommendation**  **submitted**  **unfinished**  **withdrawn** | | |
| **Example** | <**revisionDesc** **status**="published">  <**change** **status**="published"   **when**="2010-10-21"/>  <**change** **status**="cleared" **when**="2010-10-02"/>  <**change** **status**="embargoed"   **when**="2010-08-02"/>  <**change** **status**="frozen" **when**="2010-05-01"   **who**="#MSM"/>  <**change** **status**="draft" **when**="2010-03-01"   **who**="#LB"/> </**revisionDesc**> |

## att.editLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.editLike**   provides attributes describing the nature of an encoded scholarly intervention or interpretation of any kind. [[3.5. Simple Editorial Changes](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COED) [10.3.1. Origination](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/MS.html#msdates) [13.3.2. The Person Element](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPERSE) [11.3.1.1. Core Elements for Transcriptional Work](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHCO)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | affiliation age birth climate death education event faith floruit geogFeat geogName langKnowledge langKnown location nationality objectName occupation offset org orgName persName persPronouns person persona place placeName population relation residence sex socecStatus state terrain trait |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **evidence** | indicates the nature of the evidence supporting the reliability or accuracy of the intervention or interpretation.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace | | **Suggested values include:** | **internal** there is internal evidence to support the intervention.  **external** there is external evidence to support the intervention.  **conjecture** the intervention or interpretation has been made by the editor, cataloguer, or scholar on the basis of their expertise. | | | **instant** | indicates whether this is an instant revision or not.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.xTruthValue | | **Default** | false | | |
| **Note** | The members of this attribute class are typically used to represent any kind of editorial intervention in a text, for example a correction or interpretation, or to date or localize manuscripts etc.  Each pointer on the *@source* (if present) corresponding to a witness or witness group should reference a bibliographic citation such as a <witness>, <msDesc>, or <bibl> element, or another external bibliographic citation, documenting the source concerned. |

## att.fragmentable

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.fragmentable**   provides an attribute for representing fragmentation of a structural element, typically as a consequence of some overlapping hierarchy. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | att.segLike [seg] ab p |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **part** | specifies whether or not its parent element is fragmented in some way, typically by some other overlapping structure: for example a speech which is divided between two or more verse stanzas, a paragraph which is split across a page division, a verse line which is divided between two speakers.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Legal values are:** | **Y** (yes) the element is fragmented in some (unspecified) respect  **N** (no) the element is not fragmented, or no claim is made as to its completeness [Default]  **I** (initial) this is the initial part of a fragmented element  **M** (medial) this is a medial part of a fragmented element  **F** (final) this is the final part of a fragmented element | | **Note** | The values I, M, or F should be used only where it is clear how the element may be reconstituted. | | |

## att.global

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.global**   provides attributes common to all elements in the TEI encoding scheme. [[1.3.1.1. Global Attributes](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STGA)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | TEI ab addName affiliation age alt altGrp anchor annotation birth bloc body climate country death district education event faith fileDesc floruit forename genName geo geogFeat geogName join joinGrp langKnowledge langKnown link linkGrp listAnnotation listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink nationality nym object objectIdentifier objectName occupation offset org orgName p persName persPronouns person personGrp persona place placeName population publicationStmt q region relation residence roleName said seg settlement sex socecStatus sourceDesc standOff state surname teiHeader terrain text timeline title titleStmt trait when |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.global.source (@source)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **xml:id** | (identifier) provides a unique identifier for the element bearing the attribute.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | [ID](https://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema-2/#ID) | | **Note** | The *@xml:id* attribute may be used to specify a canonical reference for an element; see section [3.11. Reference Systems](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CORS). | | | **n** | (number) gives a number (or other label) for an element, which is not necessarily unique within the document.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.text | | **Note** | The value of this attribute is always understood to be a single token, even if it contains space or other punctuation characters, and need not be composed of numbers only. It is typically used to specify the numbering of chapters, sections, list items, etc.; it may also be used in the specification of a standard reference system for the text. | | | **xml:lang** | (language) indicates the language of the element content using a ‘tag’ generated according to [BCP 47](http://www.rfc-editor.org/rfc/bcp/bcp47.txt).   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.language | | <**p**> … The consequences of  this rapid depopulation were the loss of the last <**foreign** **xml:lang**="rap">ariki</**foreign**> or chief  (Routledge 1920:205,210) and their connections to  ancestral territorial organization.</**p**> | | | **Note** | The *@xml:lang* value will be inherited from the immediately enclosing element, or from its parent, and so on up the document hierarchy. It is generally good practice to specify *@xml:lang* at the highest appropriate level, noticing that a different default may be needed for the <teiHeader> from that needed for the associated resource element or elements, and that a single TEI document may contain texts in many languages.  The authoritative list of registered language subtags is maintained by IANA and is available at <http://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry>. For a good general overview of the construction of language tags, see <http://www.w3.org/International/articles/language-tags/>, and for a practical step-by-step guide, see <https://www.w3.org/International/questions/qa-choosing-language-tags.en.php>.  The value used must conform with BCP 47. If the value is a private use code (i.e., starts with x- or contains -x-), a <language> element with a matching value for its *@ident* attribute should be supplied in the TEI header to document this value. Such documentation may also optionally be supplied for non-private-use codes, though these must remain consistent with their (IETF)Internet Engineering Task Force definitions. | | | **xml:base** | provides a base URI reference with which applications can resolve relative URI references into absolute URI references.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.pointer | | <**div** **type**="bibl">  <**head**>Bibliography</**head**>  <**listBibl** **xml:base**="http://www.lib.ucdavis.edu/BWRP/Works/">   <**bibl**>    <**author**>     <**name**>Landon, Letitia Elizabeth</**name**>    </**author**>    <**ref** **target**="LandLVowOf.sgm">     <**title**>The Vow of the Peacock</**title**>    </**ref**>   </**bibl**>   <**bibl**>    <**author**>     <**name**>Compton, Margaret Clephane</**name**>    </**author**>    <**ref** **target**="NortMIrene.sgm">     <**title**>Irene, a Poem in Six Cantos</**title**>    </**ref**>   </**bibl**>   <**bibl**>    <**author**>     <**name**>Taylor, Jane</**name**>    </**author**>    <**ref** **target**="TaylJEssay.sgm">     <**title**>Essays in Rhyme on Morals and Manners</**title**>    </**ref**>   </**bibl**>  </**listBibl**> </**div**> | | | | **xml:space** | signals an intention about how white space should be managed by applications.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Legal values are:** | **default** signals that the application's default white-space processing modes are acceptable  **preserve** indicates the intent that applications preserve all white space | | **Note** | The [XML specification](http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml/#sec-white-space) provides further guidance on the use of this attribute. Note that many parsers may not handle xml:space correctly. | | |

## att.global.linking

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.global.linking**   provides a set of attributes for hypertextual linking. [[16. Linking, Segmentation, and Alignment](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SA)] | |
| **Module** | linking |
| **Members** | att.global [TEI ab addName affiliation age alt altGrp anchor annotation birth bloc body climate country death district education event faith fileDesc floruit forename genName geo geogFeat geogName join joinGrp langKnowledge langKnown link linkGrp listAnnotation listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink nationality nym object objectIdentifier objectName occupation offset org orgName p persName persPronouns person personGrp persona place placeName population publicationStmt q region relation residence roleName said seg settlement sex socecStatus sourceDesc standOff state surname teiHeader terrain text timeline title titleStmt trait when] |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **corresp** | (corresponds) points to elements that correspond to the current element in some way.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace | | <**group**>  <**text** **xml:id**="t1-g1-t1"   **xml:lang**="mi">   <**body** **xml:id**="t1-g1-t1-body1">    <**div** **type**="chapter">     <**head**>He Whakamaramatanga mo te Ture Hoko, Riihi hoki, i nga Whenua Maori, 1876.</**head**>     <**p**>…</**p**>    </**div**>   </**body**>  </**text**>  <**text** **xml:id**="t1-g1-t2"   **xml:lang**="en">   <**body** **corresp**="#t1-g1-t1-body1"    **xml:id**="t1-g1-t2-body1">    <**div** **type**="chapter">     <**head**>An Act to regulate the Sale, Letting, and Disposal of Native Lands, 1876.</**head**>     <**p**>…</**p**>    </**div**>   </**body**>  </**text**> </**group**>  In this example a <group> contains two <text>s, each containing the same document in a different language. The correspondence is indicated using *@corresp*. The language is indicated using *@xml:lang*, whose value is inherited; both the tag with the *@corresp* and the tag pointed to by the *@corresp* inherit the value from their immediate parent. | | | <!-- In a placeography called "places.xml" --><**place** **corresp**="people.xml#LOND2 people.xml#GENI1"  **xml:id**="LOND1">  <**placeName**>London</**placeName**>  <**desc**>The city of London...</**desc**> </**place**> <!-- In a literary personography called "people.xml" --> <**person** **corresp**="places.xml#LOND1 #GENI1"  **xml:id**="LOND2">  <**persName** **type**="lit">London</**persName**>  <**note**>   <**p**>Allegorical character representing the city of <**placeName** **ref**="places.xml#LOND1">London</**placeName**>.</**p**>  </**note**> </**person**> <**person** **corresp**="places.xml#LOND1 #LOND2"  **xml:id**="GENI1">  <**persName** **type**="lit">London’s Genius</**persName**>  <**note**>   <**p**>Personification of London’s genius. Appears as an      allegorical character in mayoral shows.   </**p**>  </**note**> </**person**>  In this example, a <place> element containing information about the city of London is linked with two <person> elements in a literary personography. This correspondence represents a slightly looser relationship than the one in the preceding example; there is no sense in which an allegorical character could be substituted for the physical city, or vice versa, but there is obviously a correspondence between them. | | | | **synch** | (synchronous) points to elements that are synchronous with the current element.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace | | | **sameAs** | points to an element that is the same as the current element.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.pointer | | | **copyOf** | points to an element of which the current element is a copy.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.pointer | | **Note** | Any content of the current element should be ignored. Its true content is that of the element being pointed at. | | | **next** | points to the next element of a virtual aggregate of which the current element is part.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.pointer | | **Note** | It is recommended that the element indicated be of the same type as the element bearing this attribute. | | | **prev** | (previous) points to the previous element of a virtual aggregate of which the current element is part.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.pointer | | **Note** | It is recommended that the element indicated be of the same type as the element bearing this attribute. | | | **exclude** | points to elements that are in exclusive alternation with the current element.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace | | | **select** | selects one or more alternants; if one alternant is selected, the ambiguity or uncertainty is marked as resolved. If more than one alternant is selected, the degree of ambiguity or uncertainty is marked as reduced by the number of alternants not selected.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace | | **Note** | This attribute should be placed on an element which is superordinate to all of the alternants from which the selection is being made. | | |

## att.global.rendition

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.global.rendition**   provides rendering attributes common to all elements in the TEI encoding scheme. [[1.3.1.1.3. Rendition Indicators](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STGAre)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | att.global [TEI ab addName affiliation age alt altGrp anchor annotation birth bloc body climate country death district education event faith fileDesc floruit forename genName geo geogFeat geogName join joinGrp langKnowledge langKnown link linkGrp listAnnotation listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink nationality nym object objectIdentifier objectName occupation offset org orgName p persName persPronouns person personGrp persona place placeName population publicationStmt q region relation residence roleName said seg settlement sex socecStatus sourceDesc standOff state surname teiHeader terrain text timeline title titleStmt trait when] |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **rend** | (rendition) indicates how the element in question was rendered or presented in the source text.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace | | <**head** **rend**="align(center) case(allcaps)">  <**lb**/>To The <**lb**/>Duchesse <**lb**/>of <**lb**/>Newcastle, <**lb**/>On Her <**lb**/>  <**hi** **rend**="case(mixed)">New Blazing-World</**hi**>.  </**head**> | | | **Note** | These Guidelines make no binding recommendations for the values of the *@rend* attribute; the characteristics of visual presentation vary too much from text to text and the decision to record or ignore individual characteristics varies too much from project to project. Some potentially useful conventions are noted from time to time at appropriate points in the Guidelines. The values of the *@rend* attribute are a set of sequence-indeterminate individual tokens separated by whitespace. | | | **style** | contains an expression in some formal style definition language which defines the rendering or presentation used for this element in the source text   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.text | | <**head** **style**="text-align: center; font-variant: small-caps">  <**lb**/>To The <**lb**/>Duchesse <**lb**/>of <**lb**/>Newcastle, <**lb**/>On Her <**lb**/>  <**hi** **style**="font-variant: normal">New Blazing-World</**hi**>.  </**head**> | | | **Note** | Unlike the attribute values of *@rend*, which uses whitespace as a separator, the *@style* attribute may contain whitespace. This attribute is intended for recording inline stylistic information concerning the source, not any particular output.  The formal language in which values for this attribute are expressed may be specified using the <styleDefDecl> element in the TEI header.  If *@style* and *@rendition* are both present on an element, then *@style* overrides or complements *@rendition*. *@style* should not be used in conjunction with *@rend*, because the latter does not employ a formal style definition language. | | | **rendition** | points to a description of the rendering or presentation used for this element in the source text.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace | | <**head** **rendition**="#ac #sc">  <**lb**/>To The <**lb**/>Duchesse <**lb**/>of <**lb**/>Newcastle, <**lb**/>On Her <**lb**/>  <**hi** **rendition**="#normal">New Blazing-World</**hi**>.  </**head**> <!-- elsewhere... --> <**rendition** **scheme**="css"  **xml:id**="sc">font-variant: small-caps</**rendition**> <**rendition** **scheme**="css"  **xml:id**="normal">font-variant: normal</**rendition**> <**rendition** **scheme**="css"  **xml:id**="ac">text-align: center</**rendition**> | | | **Note** | The *@rendition* attribute is used in a very similar way to the *@class* attribute defined for XHTML but with the important distinction that its function is to describe the appearance of the source text, not necessarily to determine how that text should be presented on screen or paper.  If *@rendition* is used to refer to a style definition in a formal language like CSS, it is recommended that it not be used in conjunction with *@rend*. Where both *@rendition* and *@rend* are supplied, the latter is understood to override or complement the former.  Each URI provided should indicate a <rendition> element defining the intended rendition in terms of some appropriate style language, as indicated by the *@scheme* attribute. | | |

## att.global.responsibility

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.global.responsibility**   provides attributes indicating the agent responsible for some aspect of the text, the markup or something asserted by the markup, and the degree of certainty associated with it. [[1.3.1.1.4. Sources, certainty, and responsibility](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STGAso) [3.5. Simple Editorial Changes](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COED) [11.3.2.2. Hand, Responsibility, and Certainty Attributes](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHHR) [17.3. Spans and Interpretations](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/AI.html#AISP) [13.1.1. Linking Names and Their Referents](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDATTSnr)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | att.global [TEI ab addName affiliation age alt altGrp anchor annotation birth bloc body climate country death district education event faith fileDesc floruit forename genName geo geogFeat geogName join joinGrp langKnowledge langKnown link linkGrp listAnnotation listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink nationality nym object objectIdentifier objectName occupation offset org orgName p persName persPronouns person personGrp persona place placeName population publicationStmt q region relation residence roleName said seg settlement sex socecStatus sourceDesc standOff state surname teiHeader terrain text timeline title titleStmt trait when] |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **cert** | (certainty) signifies the degree of certainty associated with the intervention or interpretation.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.probCert | | | **resp** | (responsible party) indicates the agency responsible for the intervention or interpretation, for example an editor or transcriber.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace | | **Note** | To reduce the ambiguity of a *@resp* pointing directly to a person or organization, we recommend that *@resp* be used to point not to an agent (<person> or <org>) but to a <respStmt>, <author>, <editor> or similar element which clarifies the exact role played by the agent. Pointing to multiple <respStmt>s allows the encoder to specify clearly each of the roles played in part of a TEI file (creating, transcribing, encoding, editing, proofing etc.). | | |
| **Example** | Blessed are the <**choice**>  <**sic**>cheesemakers</**sic**>  <**corr** **cert**="high" **resp**="#editor">peacemakers</**corr**> </**choice**>: for they shall be called the children of God. |
| **Example** | <!-- in the <text> ... --><**lg**> <!-- ... -->  <**l**>Punkes, Panders, baſe extortionizing    sla<**choice**>    <**sic**>n</**sic**>    <**corr** **resp**="#JENS1\_transcriber">u</**corr**>   </**choice**>es,</**l**> <!-- ... --> </**lg**> <!-- in the <teiHeader> ... --> <!-- ... --> <**respStmt** **xml:id**="JENS1\_transcriber">  <**resp** **when**="2014">Transcriber</**resp**>  <**name**>Janelle Jenstad</**name**> </**respStmt**> |

## att.global.source

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.global.source**   provides an attribute used by elements to point to an external source. [[1.3.1.1.4. Sources, certainty, and responsibility](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STGAso) [3.3.3. Quotation](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COHQQ) [8.3.4. Writing](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TS.html#TSBAWR)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | att.global [TEI ab addName affiliation age alt altGrp anchor annotation birth bloc body climate country death district education event faith fileDesc floruit forename genName geo geogFeat geogName join joinGrp langKnowledge langKnown link linkGrp listAnnotation listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink nationality nym object objectIdentifier objectName occupation offset org orgName p persName persPronouns person personGrp persona place placeName population publicationStmt q region relation residence roleName said seg settlement sex socecStatus sourceDesc standOff state surname teiHeader terrain text timeline title titleStmt trait when] |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **source** | specifies the source from which some aspect of this element is drawn.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace | | **Note** | The *@source* attribute points to an external source. When used on elements describing schema components such as <schemaSpec> or <moduleRef> it identifies the source from which declarations for the components of the object being defined may be obtained.  On other elements it provides a pointer to the bibliographical source from which a quotation or citation is drawn.  In either case, the location may be provided using any form of URI, for example an absolute URI, a relative URI, or private scheme URI that is expanded to an absolute URI as documented in a <prefixDef>.  If more than one location is specified, the default assumption is that the required source should be obtained by combining the resources indicated. | | |
| **Example** | <**p**> <!-- ... --> As Willard McCarty (<**bibl** **xml:id**="mcc\_2012">2012, p.2</**bibl**>) tells us, <**quote** **source**="#mcc\_2012">‘Collaboration’ is a problematic and should be a contested    term.</**quote**> <!-- ... --> </**p**> |
| **Example** | <**p**> <!-- ... -->  <**quote** **source**="#chicago\_15\_ed">Grammatical theories are in flux, and the more we learn, the    less we seem to know.</**quote**> <!-- ... --> </**p**> <!-- ... --> <**bibl** **xml:id**="chicago\_15\_ed">  <**title** **level**="m">The Chicago Manual of Style</**title**>, <**edition**>15th edition</**edition**>. <**pubPlace**>Chicago</**pubPlace**>: <**publisher**>University of    Chicago Press</**publisher**> (<**date**>2003</**date**>), <**biblScope** **unit**="page">p.147</**biblScope**>.  </**bibl**> |
| **Example** | <**elementRef** **key**="p" **source**="tei:2.0.1"/>  Include in the schema an element named <p> available from the TEI P5 2.0.1 release. |
| **Example** | <**schemaSpec** **ident**="myODD"  **source**="mycompiledODD.xml"> <!-- further declarations specifying the components required --> </**schemaSpec**>  Create a schema using components taken from the file mycompiledODD.xml. |

## att.naming

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.naming**   provides attributes common to elements which refer to named persons, places, organizations etc. [[3.6.1. Referring Strings](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONARS) [13.3.6. Names and Nyms](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDNYM)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | att.personal [addName forename genName objectName orgName persName placeName roleName surname] affiliation birth bloc climate country death district education event geogFeat geogName nationality occupation offset population region residence settlement socecStatus state terrain trait |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.canonical (@key, @ref)   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **role** | may be used to specify further information about the entity referenced by this name in the form of a set of whitespace-separated values, for example the occupation of a person, or the status of a place.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace | | | **nymRef** | (reference to the canonical name) provides a means of locating the canonical form (nym) of the names associated with the object named by the element bearing it.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace | | **Note** | The value must point directly to one or more XML elements by means of one or more URIs, separated by whitespace. If more than one is supplied, the implication is that the name is associated with several distinct canonical names. | | |

## att.notated

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.notated**   provides an attribute to indicate any specialised notation used for element content. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | listAnnotation seg |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **notation** | names the notation used for the content of the element.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | |

## att.personal

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.personal**   (attributes for components of names usually, but not necessarily, personal names) common attributes for those elements which form part of a name usually, but not necessarily, a personal name. [[13.2.1. Personal Names](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPER)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | addName forename genName objectName orgName persName placeName roleName surname |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **full** | indicates whether the name component is given in full, as an abbreviation or simply as an initial.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Legal values are:** | **yes** (yes) the name component is spelled out in full. [Default]  **abb** (abbreviated) the name component is given in an abbreviated form.  **init** (initial letter) the name component is indicated only by one initial. | | | **sort** | (sort) specifies the sort order of the name component in relation to others within the name.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.count | | |

## att.pointing

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.pointing**   provides a set of attributes used by all elements which point to other elements by means of one or more URI references. [[1.3.1.1.2. Language Indicators](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STGAla) [3.7. Simple Links and Cross-References](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COXR)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | att.pointing.group [altGrp joinGrp linkGrp] alt annotation join link |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **targetLang** | specifies the language of the content to be found at the destination referenced by *@target*, using a ‘language tag’ generated according to [BCP 47](http://www.rfc-editor.org/rfc/bcp/bcp47.txt).   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.language | | **Schematron** | <sch:rule context="tei:\*[not(self::tei:schemaSpec)][@targetLang]"> <sch:assert test="@target">@targetLang should only be used on <sch:name/> if @target is specified.</sch:assert> </sch:rule> | | <**linkGrp** **xml:id**="pol-swh\_aln\_2.1-linkGrp">  <**ptr** **target**="pol/UDHR/text.xml#pol\_txt\_1-head"   **targetLang**="pl"   **type**="tuv"   **xml:id**="pol-swh\_aln\_2.1.1-ptr"/>  <**ptr** **target**="swh/UDHR/text.xml#swh\_txt\_1-head"   **targetLang**="sw"   **type**="tuv"   **xml:id**="pol-swh\_aln\_2.1.2-ptr"/> </**linkGrp**>  In the example above, the <linkGrp> combines pointers at parallel fragments of the *Universal Declaration of Human Rights*: one of them is in Polish, the other in Swahili. | | | **Note** | The value must conform to BCP 47. If the value is a private use code (i.e., starts with x- or contains -x-), a <language> element with a matching value for its *@ident* attribute should be supplied in the TEI header to document this value. Such documentation may also optionally be supplied for non-private-use codes, though these must remain consistent with their (IETF)Internet Engineering Task Force definitions. | | | **target** | specifies the destination of the reference by supplying one or more URI References   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace | | **Note** | One or more syntactically valid URI references, separated by whitespace. Because whitespace is used to separate URIs, no whitespace is permitted inside a single URI. If a whitespace character is required in a URI, it should be escaped with the normal mechanism, e.g. TEI%20Consortium. | | | **evaluate** | (evaluate) specifies the intended meaning when the target of a pointer is itself a pointer.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Legal values are:** | **all** if the element pointed to is itself a pointer, then the target of that pointer will be taken, and so on, until an element is found which is not a pointer.  **one** if the element pointed to is itself a pointer, then its target (whether a pointer or not) is taken as the target of this pointer.  **none** no further evaluation of targets is carried out beyond that needed to find the element specified in the pointer's target. | | **Note** | If no value is given, the application program is responsible for deciding (possibly on the basis of user input) how far to trace a chain of pointers. | | |

## att.pointing.group

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.pointing.group**   provides a set of attributes common to all elements which enclose groups of pointer elements. [[16. Linking, Segmentation, and Alignment](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SA)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | altGrp joinGrp linkGrp |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.typed (@type, @subtype)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **domains** | optionally specifies the identifiers of the elements within which all elements indicated by the contents of this element lie.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 2–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace | | **Note** | If this attribute is supplied every element specified as a target must be contained within the element or elements named by it. An application may choose whether or not to report failures to satisfy this constraint as errors, but may not access an element of the right identifier but in the wrong context. If this attribute is not supplied, then target elements may appear anywhere within the target document. | | | **targFunc** | (target function) describes the function of each of the values of the *@target* attribute of the enclosed <link>, <join>, or <alt> tags.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | 2–∞ occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace | | **Note** | The number of separate values must match the number of values in the *@target* attribute in the enclosed <link>, <join>, or <alt> tags (an intermediate <ptr> element may be needed to accomplish this). It should also match the number of values in the *@domains* attribute, of the current element, if one has been specified. | | |

## att.ranging

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.ranging**   provides attributes for describing numerical ranges. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | att.dimensions [age birth death floruit geogFeat offset population state trait] |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **atLeast** | gives a minimum estimated value for the approximate measurement.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.numeric | | | **atMost** | gives a maximum estimated value for the approximate measurement.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.numeric | | | **min** | where the measurement summarizes more than one observation or a range, supplies the minimum value observed.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.numeric | | | **max** | where the measurement summarizes more than one observation or a range, supplies the maximum value observed.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.numeric | | | **confidence** | specifies the degree of statistical confidence (between zero and one) that a value falls within the range specified by *@min* and *@max*, or the proportion of observed values that fall within that range.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.probability | | |
| **Example** | The MS. was lost in transmission by mail from <**del** **rend**="overstrike">  <**gap** **atLeast**="1" **atMost**="2"   **extent**="one or two letters" **reason**="illegible" **unit**="chars"/> </**del**> Philadelphia to the Graphic office, New York. |

## att.segLike

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.segLike**   provides attributes for elements used for arbitrary segmentation. [[16.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SASE) [17.1. Linguistic Segment Categories](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/AI.html#AILC)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | seg |
| **Attributes** | Attributes att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat) att.fragmentable (@part)   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **function** | (function) characterizes the function of the segment.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Note** | Attribute values will often vary depending on the type of element to which they are attached. For example, a <cl>, may take values such as coordinate, subject, adverbial etc. For a <phr>, such values as subject, predicate etc. may be more appropriate. Such constraints will typically be implemented by a project-defined customization. | | |

## att.sortable

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.sortable**   provides attributes for elements in lists or groups that are sortable, but whose sorting key cannot be derived mechanically from the element content. [[9.1. Dictionary Body and Overall Structure](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DI.html#DIBO)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | event listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation nym object org person personGrp persona place relation |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **sortKey** | supplies the sort key for this element in an index, list or group which contains it.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.word | | David's other principal backer, Josiah  ha-Kohen <**index** **indexName**="NAMES">  <**term** **sortKey**="Azarya\_Josiah\_Kohen">Josiah ha-Kohen b. Azarya</**term**> </**index**> b. Azarya, son of one of the last gaons of Sura was David's own first  cousin. | | | **Note** | The sort key is used to determine the sequence and grouping of entries in an index. It provides a sequence of characters which, when sorted with the other values, will produced the desired order; specifics of sort key construction are application-dependent  Dictionary order often differs from the collation sequence of machine-readable character sets; in English-language dictionaries, an entry for 4-H will often appear alphabetized under ‘fourh’, and McCoy may be alphabetized under ‘maccoy’, while A1, A4, and A5 may all appear in numeric order ‘alphabetized’ between ‘a-’ and ‘AA’. The sort key is required if the orthography of the dictionary entry does not suffice to determine its location. | | |

## att.typed

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.typed**   provides attributes which can be used to classify or subclassify elements in any way. [[1.3.1. Attribute Classes](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STECAT) [17.1.1. Words and Above](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/AI.html#AILCW) [3.6.1. Referring Strings](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONARS) [3.7. Simple Links and Cross-References](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COXR) [3.6.5. Abbreviations and Their Expansions](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#CONAAB) [3.13.1. Core Tags for Verse](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CO.html#COVE) [7.2.5. Speech Contents](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DR.html#DRPAL) [4.1.1. Un-numbered Divisions](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSDIV1) [4.1.2. Numbered Divisions](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSDIV2) [4.2.1. Headings and Trailers](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSHD) [4.4. Virtual Divisions](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/DS.html#DSVIRT) [13.3.2.3. Personal Relationships](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ND.html#NDPERSREL) [11.3.1.1. Core Elements for Transcriptional Work](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/PH.html#PHCO) [16.1.1. Pointers and Links](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SAPTL) [16.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/SA.html#SASE) [12.2. Linking the Apparatus to the Text](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TC.html#TCAPLK) [22.5.1.2. Defining Content Models: RELAX NG](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TD.html#TDTAGCONT) [8.3. Elements Unique to Spoken Texts](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/TS.html#TSBA) [23.3.1.3. Modification of Attribute and Attribute Value Lists](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/USE.html#MDMDAL)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | att.pointing.group [altGrp joinGrp linkGrp] TEI ab addName affiliation age alt anchor birth bloc climate country death district education event faith forename genName geogFeat geogName join langKnowledge link listAnnotation listEvent listNym listObject listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink nationality nym object objectName occupation offset org orgName persName persPronouns place placeName population region relation residence roleName seg settlement sex socecStatus standOff state surname terrain text title trait |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **type** | characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | <**div** **type**="verse">  <**head**>Night in Tarras</**head**>  <**lg** **type**="stanza">   <**l**>At evening tramping on the hot white road</**l**>   <**l**>…</**l**>  </**lg**>  <**lg** **type**="stanza">   <**l**>A wind sprang up from nowhere as the sky</**l**>   <**l**>…</**l**>  </**lg**> </**div**> | | | **Note** | The *@type* attribute is present on a number of elements, not all of which are members of att.typed, usually because these elements restrict the possible values for the attribute in a specific way. | | | **subtype** | (subtype) provides a sub-categorization of the element, if needed   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.enumerated | | **Note** | The *@subtype* attribute may be used to provide any sub-classification for the element additional to that provided by its *@type* attribute. | | |
| **Schematron** | <sch:rule context="tei:\*[@subtype]"> <sch:assert test="@type">The <sch:name/> element should not be categorized in detail with @subtype unless also categorized in general with @type</sch:assert> </sch:rule> |
| **Note** | When appropriate, values from an established typology should be used. Alternatively a typology may be defined in the associated TEI header. If values are to be taken from a project-specific list, this should be defined using the <valList> element in the project-specific schema description, as described in [23.3.1.3. Modification of Attribute and Attribute Value Lists](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/USE.html#MDMDAL) . |

## att.written

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **att.written**   provides an attribute to indicate the hand in which the content of an element was written in the source being transcribed. [[1.3.1. Attribute Classes](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STECAT)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Members** | ab p seg text |
| **Attributes** | Attributes   |  |  |  |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | | **hand** | points to a <handNote> element describing the hand considered responsible for the content of the element concerned.   |  |  | | --- | --- | | **Status** | Optional | | **Datatype** | teidata.pointer | | |

# Macros

## macro.paraContent

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **macro.paraContent** (paragraph content) defines the content of paragraphs and similar elements. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | ab p seg title |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.gLike"/>   <classRef key="model.phrase"/>   <classRef key="model.inter"/>   <classRef key="model.global"/>   <elementRef key="lg"/>   <classRef key="model.lLike"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Declaration** | tei\_macro.paraContent =  (  text  | [tei\_model.gLike](#TEI.tei_model.gLike) | [tei\_model.phrase](#TEI.tei_model.phrase) | [tei\_model.inter](#TEI.tei_model.inter) | [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global) | [lg](#TEI.lg) | [tei\_model.lLike](#TEI.tei_model.lLike) )\* |

## macro.phraseSeq

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **macro.phraseSeq** (phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and phrase-level elements. [[1.4.1. Standard Content Models](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STECST)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | addName affiliation birth bloc country death district education faith floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName nameLink nationality objectName offset orgName persName persPronouns placeName region residence roleName settlement sex socecStatus surname |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.gLike"/>   <classRef key="model.attributable"/>   <classRef key="model.phrase"/>   <classRef key="model.global"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Declaration** | tei\_macro.phraseSeq =  (  text  | [tei\_model.gLike](#TEI.tei_model.gLike) | [tei\_model.attributable](#TEI.tei_model.attributable) | [tei\_model.phrase](#TEI.tei_model.phrase) | [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global) )\* |

## macro.phraseSeq.limited

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **macro.phraseSeq.limited** (limited phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and those phrase-level elements that are not typically used for transcribing extant documents. [[1.4.1. Standard Content Models](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STECST)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | age langKnown |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"/>   <classRef key="model.global"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Declaration** | tei\_macro.phraseSeq.limited =  ( text | [tei\_model.limitedPhrase](#TEI.tei_model.limitedPhrase) | [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global) )\* |

## macro.specialPara

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **macro.specialPara** ('special' paragraph content) defines the content model of elements such as notes or list items, which either contain a series of component-level elements or else have the same structure as a paragraph, containing a series of phrase-level and inter-level elements. [[1.3. The TEI Class System](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/ST.html#STEC)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | occupation q said |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate maxOccurs="unbounded"   minOccurs="0">   <textNode/>   <classRef key="model.gLike"/>   <classRef key="model.phrase"/>   <classRef key="model.inter"/>   <classRef key="model.divPart"/>   <classRef key="model.global"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Declaration** | tei\_macro.specialPara =  (  text  | [tei\_model.gLike](#TEI.tei_model.gLike) | [tei\_model.phrase](#TEI.tei_model.phrase) | [tei\_model.inter](#TEI.tei_model.inter) | [tei\_model.divPart](#TEI.tei_model.divPart) | [tei\_model.global](#TEI.tei_model.global) )\* |

# Datatypes

## teidata.certainty

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.certainty** defines the range of attribute values expressing a degree of certainty. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | teidata.probCert |
| **Content model** | <content>  <valList type="closed">   <valItem ident="high"/>   <valItem ident="medium"/>   <valItem ident="low"/>   <valItem ident="unknown"/>  </valList> </content> |
| **Declaration** | tei\_teidata.certainty = "high" | "medium" | "low" | "unknown" |
| **Note** | Certainty may be expressed by one of the predefined symbolic values high, medium, or low. The value unknown should be used in cases where the encoder does not wish to assert an opinion about the matter. |

## teidata.count

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.count** defines the range of attribute values used for a non-negative integer value used as a count. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:   * age/@value |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="nonNegativeInteger"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | tei\_teidata.count = xsd:nonNegativeInteger |
| **Note** | Any positive integer value or zero is permitted |

## teidata.duration.iso

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.duration.iso** defines the range of attribute values available for representation of a duration in time using ISO 8601 standard formats | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** |  |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="token"   restriction="[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:+\-]+"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | tei\_teidata.duration.iso = token { pattern = "[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:+\-]+" } |
| **Example** | <**time** **dur-iso**="PT0,75H">three-quarters of an hour</**time**> |
| **Example** | <**date** **dur-iso**="P1,5D">a day and a half</**date**> |
| **Example** | <**date** **dur-iso**="P14D">a fortnight</**date**> |
| **Example** | <**time** **dur-iso**="PT0.02S">20 ms</**time**> |
| **Note** | A duration is expressed as a sequence of number-letter pairs, preceded by the letter P; the letter gives the unit and may be Y (year), M (month), D (day), H (hour), M (minute), or S (second), in that order. The numbers are all unsigned integers, except for the last, which may have a decimal component (using either . or , as the decimal point; the latter is preferred). If any number is 0, then that number-letter pair may be omitted. If any of the H (hour), M (minute), or S (second) number-letter pairs are present, then the separator T must precede the first ‘time’ number-letter pair.  For complete details, see ISO 8601 *Data elements and interchange formats — Information interchange — Representation of dates and times*. |

## teidata.duration.w3c

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.duration.w3c** defines the range of attribute values available for representation of a duration in time using W3C datatypes. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** |  |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="duration"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | tei\_teidata.duration.w3c = xsd:duration |
| **Example** | <**time** **dur**="PT45M">forty-five minutes</**time**> |
| **Example** | <**date** **dur**="P1DT12H">a day and a half</**date**> |
| **Example** | <**date** **dur**="P7D">a week</**date**> |
| **Example** | <**time** **dur**="PT0.02S">20 ms</**time**> |
| **Note** | A duration is expressed as a sequence of number-letter pairs, preceded by the letter P; the letter gives the unit and may be Y (year), M (month), D (day), H (hour), M (minute), or S (second), in that order. The numbers are all unsigned integers, except for the S number, which may have a decimal component (using . as the decimal point). If any number is 0, then that number-letter pair may be omitted. If any of the H (hour), M (minute), or S (second) number-letter pairs are present, then the separator T must precede the first ‘time’ number-letter pair.  For complete details, see the [W3C specification](http://www.w3.org/TR/2004/REC-xmlschema-2-20041028/#duration). |

## teidata.enumerated

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.enumerated** defines the range of attribute values expressed as a single XML name taken from a list of documented possibilities. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:   * affiliation/@type * age/@type * alt/@mode * altGrp/@mode * annotation/@motivation * birth/@type * death/@type * education/@type * faith/@type * join/@scope * langKnowledge/@type * nationality/@type * occupation/@type * org/@role * persPronouns/@evidence * persPronouns/@value * person/@role * person/@age * personGrp/@role * personGrp/@age * persona/@role * persona/@age * q/@type * relation/@name * residence/@type * sex/@type * socecStatus/@type * timeline/@unit * title/@type * title/@level * when/@unit |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef key="teidata.word"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | tei\_teidata.enumerated = [teidata.word](#TEI.teidata.word) |
| **Note** | Attributes using this datatype must contain a single ‘word’ which contains only letters, digits, punctuation characters, or symbols: thus it cannot include whitespace.  Typically, the list of documented possibilities will be provided (or exemplified) by a value list in the associated attribute specification, expressed with a <valList> element. |

## teidata.interval

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.interval** defines attribute values used to express an interval value. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:   * timeline/@interval * when/@interval |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <dataRef name="float"/>   <valList>    <valItem ident="regular"/>    <valItem ident="irregular"/>    <valItem ident="unknown"/>   </valList>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Declaration** | tei\_teidata.interval = xsd:float | ( "regular" | "irregular" | "unknown" ) |
| **Note** | Any value greater than zero or any one of the values regular, irregular, unknown. |

## teidata.language

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.language** defines the range of attribute values used to identify a particular combination of human language and writing system. [[6.1. Language Identification](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/CH.html#CHSH)] | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:   * langKnowledge/@tags * langKnown/@tag |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <dataRef name="language"/>   <valList>    <valItem ident=""/>   </valList>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Declaration** | tei\_teidata.language = xsd:language | ( "" ) |
| **Note** | The values for this attribute are language ‘tags’ as defined in [BCP 47](https://tools.ietf.org/html/bcp47). Currently BCP 47 comprises RFC 5646 and RFC 4647; over time, other IETF documents may succeed these as the best current practice.  A ‘language tag’, per BCP 47, is assembled from a sequence of components or subtags separated by the hyphen character (-, U+002D). The tag is made of the following subtags, in the following order. Every subtag except the first is optional. If present, each occurs only once, except the fourth and fifth components (variant and extension), which are repeatable.  **language** The IANA-registered code for the language. This is almost always the same as the ISO 639 2-letter language code if there is one. The list of available registered language subtags can be found at <http://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry>. It is recommended that this code be written in lower case.  **script** The ISO 15924 code for the script. These codes consist of 4 letters, and it is recommended they be written with an initial capital, the other three letters in lower case. The canonical list of codes is maintained by the Unicode Consortium, and is available at <http://unicode.org/iso15924/iso15924-codes.html>. The IETF recommends this code be omitted unless it is necessary to make a distinction you need.  **region** Either an ISO 3166 country code or a UN M.49 region code that is registered with IANA (not all such codes are registered, e.g. UN codes for economic groupings or codes for countries for which there is already an ISO 3166 2-letter code are not registered). The former consist of 2 letters, and it is recommended they be written in upper case; the list of codes can be searched or browsed at <https://www.iso.org/obp/ui/#search/code/>. The latter consist of 3 digits; the list of codes can be found at <http://unstats.un.org/unsd/methods/m49/m49.htm>.  **variant** An IANA-registered variation. These codes ‘are used to indicate additional, well-recognized variations that define a language or its dialects that are not covered by other available subtags’.  **extension** An extension has the format of a single letter followed by a hyphen followed by additional subtags. These exist to allow for future extension to BCP 47, but as of this writing no such extensions are in use.  **private use** An extension that uses the initial subtag of the single letter x (i.e., starts with x-) has no meaning except as negotiated among the parties involved. These should be used with great care, since they interfere with the interoperability that use of RFC 4646 is intended to promote. In order for a document that makes use of these subtags to be TEI-conformant, a corresponding <language> element must be present in the TEI header.  There are two exceptions to the above format. First, there are language tags in the [IANA registry](http://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry) that do not match the above syntax, but are present because they have been ‘grandfathered’ from previous specifications.  Second, an entire language tag can consist of only a private use subtag. These tags start with x-, and do not need to follow any further rules established by the IETF and endorsed by these Guidelines. Like all language tags that make use of private use subtags, the language in question must be documented in a corresponding <language> element in the TEI header.  Examples include  sn Shona  zh-TW Taiwanese  zh-Hant-HK Chinese written in traditional script as used in Hong Kong  en-SL English as spoken in Sierra Leone  pl Polish  es-MX Spanish as spoken in Mexico  es-419 Spanish as spoken in Latin America  The W3C Internationalization Activity has published a useful introduction to BCP 47, [Language tags in HTML and XML](http://www.w3.org/International/articles/language-tags/Overview.en.php). |

## teidata.name

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.name** defines the range of attribute values expressed as an XML Name. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:   * join/@result * joinGrp/@result |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="Name"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | tei\_teidata.name = xsd:Name |
| **Note** | Attributes using this datatype must contain a single word which follows the rules defining a legal XML name (see <http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml/#dt-name>): for example they cannot include whitespace or begin with digits. |

## teidata.numeric

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.numeric** defines the range of attribute values used for numeric values. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** |  |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <dataRef name="double"/>   <dataRef name="token"    restriction="(\-?[\d]+/\-?[\d]+)"/>   <dataRef name="decimal"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Declaration** | tei\_teidata.numeric =  xsd:double | token { pattern = "(\-?[\d]+/\-?[\d]+)" } | xsd:decimal |
| **Note** | Any numeric value, represented as a decimal number, in floating point format, or as a ratio.  To represent a floating point number, expressed in scientific notation, ‘E notation’, a variant of ‘exponential notation’, may be used. In this format, the value is expressed as two numbers separated by the letter E. The first number, the significand (sometimes called the mantissa) is given in decimal format, while the second is an integer. The value is obtained by multiplying the mantissa by 10 the number of times indicated by the integer. Thus the value represented in decimal notation as 1000.0 might be represented in scientific notation as 10E3.  A value expressed as a ratio is represented by two integer values separated by a solidus (/) character. Thus, the value represented in decimal notation as 0.5 might be represented as a ratio by the string 1/2. |

## teidata.outputMeasurement

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.outputMeasurement** defines a range of values for use in specifying the size of an object that is intended for display. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** |  |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="token"   restriction="[\-+]?\d+(\.\d+)?(%|cm|mm|in|pt|pc|px|em|ex|gd|rem|vw|vh|vm)"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | tei\_teidata.outputMeasurement =  token  {  pattern = "[\-+]?\d+(\.\d+)?(%|cm|mm|in|pt|pc|px|em|ex|gd|rem|vw|vh|vm)"  } |
| **Example** | <**figure**>  <**head**>The TEI Logo</**head**>  <**figDesc**>Stylized yellow angle brackets with the letters <**mentioned**>TEI</**mentioned**> in    between and <**mentioned**>text encoding initiative</**mentioned**> underneath, all on a white    background.</**figDesc**>  <**graphic** **height**="600px"   **url**="http://www.tei-c.org/logos/TEI-600.jpg" **width**="600px"/> </**figure**> |
| **Note** | These values map directly onto the values used by XSL-FO and CSS. For definitions of the units see those specifications; at the time of this writing the most complete list is in the [CSS3 working draft](http://www.w3.org/TR/2005/WD-css3-values-20050726/#numbers0). |

## teidata.pattern

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.pattern** defines attribute values which are expressed as a regular expression. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** |  |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="token"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | tei\_teidata.pattern = token |
| **Note** | A regular expression, often called a pattern, is an expression that describes a set of strings. They are usually used to give a concise description of a set, without having to list all elements. For example, the set containing the three strings Handel, Händel, and Haendel can be described by the pattern H(ä|ae?)ndel (or alternatively, it is said that the pattern H(ä|ae?)ndel matches each of the three strings)  [Wikipedia](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Regular_expression#Basic_concepts)  This TEI datatype is mapped to the XSD token datatype, and may therefore contain any string of characters. However, it is recommended that the value used conform to the particular flavour of regular expression syntax supported by XSD Schema. |

## teidata.pointer

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.pointer** defines the range of attribute values used to provide a single URI, absolute or relative, pointing to some other resource, either within the current document or elsewhere. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:   * alt/@target * annotation/@target * event/@where * nym/@parts * occupation/@scheme * occupation/@code * relation/@active * relation/@mutual * relation/@passive * socecStatus/@scheme * socecStatus/@code * timeline/@origin * when/@since |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="anyURI"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | tei\_teidata.pointer = xsd:anyURI |
| **Note** | The range of syntactically valid values is defined by  [RFC 3986](http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc3986.txt)*Uniform Resource Identifier (URI): Generic Syntax*. Note that the values themselves are encoded using [RFC 3987](http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc3987.txt)*Internationalized Resource Identifiers* (IRIs) mapping to URIs. For example, https://secure.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/en/wiki/% is encoded as https://secure.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/en/wiki/%25 while http://موقع.وزارة-الاتصالات.مصر/ is encoded as http://xn--4gbrim.xn----rmckbbajlc6dj7bxne2c.xn--wgbh1c/ |

## teidata.probCert

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.probCert** defines a range of attribute values which can be expressed either as a numeric probability or as a coded certainty value. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** |  |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <dataRef key="teidata.probability"/>   <dataRef key="teidata.certainty"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Declaration** | tei\_teidata.probCert = [teidata.probability](#TEI.teidata.probability) | [teidata.certainty](#TEI.teidata.certainty) |

## teidata.probability

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.probability** defines the range of attribute values expressing a probability. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | teidata.probCertElement:   * alt/@weights |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="double"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | tei\_teidata.probability = xsd:double |
| **Note** | Probability is expressed as a real number between 0 and 1; 0 representing certainly false and 1 representing certainly true. |

## teidata.replacement

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.replacement** defines attribute values which contain a replacement template. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** |  |
| **Content model** | <content>  <textNode/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | tei\_teidata.replacement = text |

## teidata.sex

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.sex** defines the range of attribute values used to identify human or animal sex. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:   * person/@sex * personGrp/@sex * persona/@sex * sex/@value |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef key="teidata.word"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | tei\_teidata.sex = [teidata.word](#TEI.teidata.word) |
| **Note** | Values for attributes using this datatype may be locally defined by a project, or may refer to an external standard, such as vCard's sex property <http://microformats.org/wiki/gender-formats> (in which M indicates male, F female, O other, N none or not applicable, U unknown), or the often used ISO 5218:2004 *Representation of Human Sexes*<http://standards.iso.org/ittf/PubliclyAvailableStandards/c036266_ISO_IEC_5218_2004(E_F).zip> (in which 0 indicates unknown; 1 male; 2 female; and 9 not applicable, although the ISO standard is widely considered inadequate); cf. CETH's *Recommendations for Inclusive Data Collection of Trans People*<http://transhealth.ucsf.edu/trans?page=lib-data-collection>. |

## teidata.temporal.iso

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.temporal.iso** defines the range of attribute values expressing a temporal expression such as a date, a time, or a combination of them, that conform to the international standard *Data elements and interchange formats – Information interchange – Representation of dates and times*. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** |  |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <dataRef name="date"/>   <dataRef name="gYear"/>   <dataRef name="gMonth"/>   <dataRef name="gDay"/>   <dataRef name="gYearMonth"/>   <dataRef name="gMonthDay"/>   <dataRef name="time"/>   <dataRef name="dateTime"/>   <dataRef name="token"    restriction="[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:+\-]+"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Declaration** | tei\_teidata.temporal.iso =  xsd:date  | xsd:gYear  | xsd:gMonth  | xsd:gDay  | xsd:gYearMonth  | xsd:gMonthDay  | xsd:time  | xsd:dateTime  | token { pattern = "[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:+\-]+" } |
| **Note** | If it is likely that the value used is to be compared with another, then a time zone indicator should always be included, and only the dateTime representation should be used.  For all representations for which ISO 8601 describes both a basic and an extended format, these Guidelines recommend use of the extended format.  While ISO 8601 permits the use of both 00:00 and 24:00 to represent midnight, these Guidelines strongly recommend against the use of 24:00. |

## teidata.temporal.w3c

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.temporal.w3c** defines the range of attribute values expressing a temporal expression such as a date, a time, or a combination of them, that conform to the W3C *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition* specification. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:   * when/@absolute |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <dataRef name="date"/>   <dataRef name="gYear"/>   <dataRef name="gMonth"/>   <dataRef name="gDay"/>   <dataRef name="gYearMonth"/>   <dataRef name="gMonthDay"/>   <dataRef name="time"/>   <dataRef name="dateTime"/>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Declaration** | tei\_teidata.temporal.w3c =  xsd:date  | xsd:gYear  | xsd:gMonth  | xsd:gDay  | xsd:gYearMonth  | xsd:gMonthDay  | xsd:time  | xsd:dateTime |
| **Note** | If it is likely that the value used is to be compared with another, then a time zone indicator should always be included, and only the dateTime representation should be used. |

## teidata.text

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.text** defines the range of attribute values used to express some kind of identifying string as a single sequence of Unicode characters possibly including whitespace. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** |  |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="string"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | tei\_teidata.text = string |
| **Note** | Attributes using this datatype must contain a single ‘token’ in which whitespace and other punctuation characters are permitted. |

## teidata.truthValue

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.truthValue** defines the range of attribute values used to express a truth value. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** |  |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="boolean"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | tei\_teidata.truthValue = xsd:boolean |
| **Note** | The possible values of this datatype are 1 or true, or 0 or false.  This datatype applies only for cases where uncertainty is inappropriate; if the attribute concerned may have a value other than true or false, e.g. unknown, or inapplicable, it should have the extended version of this datatype: teidata.xTruthValue. |

## teidata.version

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.version** defines the range of attribute values which may be used to specify a TEI or Unicode version number. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:   * TEI/@version |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="token"   restriction="[\d]+(\.[\d]+){0,2}"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | tei\_teidata.version = token { pattern = "[\d]+(\.[\d]+){0,2}" } |
| **Note** | The value of this attribute follows the pattern specified by the Unicode consortium for its version number (<http://unicode.org/versions/>). A version number contains digits and fullstop characters only. The first number supplied identifies the major version number. A second and third number, for minor and sub-minor version numbers, may also be supplied. |

## teidata.versionNumber

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.versionNumber** defines the range of attribute values used for version numbers. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** |  |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="token"   restriction="[\d]+[a-z]\*[\d]\*(\.[\d]+[a-z]\*[\d]\*){0,3}"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | tei\_teidata.versionNumber =  token { pattern = "[\d]+[a-z]\*[\d]\*(\.[\d]+[a-z]\*[\d]\*){0,3}" } |

## teidata.word

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.word** defines the range of attribute values expressed as a single word or token. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | teidata.enumerated teidata.sexElement:   * langKnown/@level * personGrp/@size |
| **Content model** | <content>  <dataRef name="token"   restriction="[^\p{C}\p{Z}]+"/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | tei\_teidata.word = token { pattern = "[^\p{C}\p{Z}]+" } |
| **Note** | Attributes using this datatype must contain a single ‘word’ which contains only letters, digits, punctuation characters, or symbols: thus it cannot include whitespace. |

## teidata.xTruthValue

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.xTruthValue** (extended truth value) defines the range of attribute values used to express a truth value which may be unknown. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** | Element:   * said/@aloud * said/@direct |
| **Content model** | <content>  <alternate>   <dataRef name="boolean"/>   <valList>    <valItem ident="unknown"/>    <valItem ident="inapplicable"/>   </valList>  </alternate> </content> |
| **Declaration** | tei\_teidata.xTruthValue = xsd:boolean | ( "unknown" | "inapplicable" ) |
| **Note** | In cases where where uncertainty is inappropriate, use the datatype teidata.TruthValue. |

## teidata.xpath

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| **teidata.xpath** defines attribute values which contain an XPath expression. | |
| **Module** | tei |
| **Used by** |  |
| **Content model** | <content>  <textNode/> </content> |
| **Declaration** | tei\_teidata.xpath = text |
| **Note** | Any XPath expression using the syntax defined in [6.2.](https://www.tei-c.org/release/doc/tei-p5-doc/en/html/BIB.html#XSLT2).  When writing programs that evaluate XPath expressions, programmers should be mindful of the possibility of malicious code injection attacks. For further information about XPath injection attacks, see the [article at OWASP](https://owasp.org/www-community/attacks/XPATH_Injection). |